

IBM SAS RAID Controller Module Host Systems Attachment Guide



IBM SAS RAID Controller Module Host Systems Attachment Guide

#### Note

Before using this information and the product it supports, read the information in the "Notices" on page 169 section.

**Eleventh Edition (October 2013)** 

© Copyright IBM Corporation 2010, 2013. US Government Users Restricted Rights – Use, duplication or disclosure restricted by GSA ADP Schedule Contract with IBM Corp.

## Contents

Figures
Tables
Safety       xiii         Guidelines for trained service technicians       xv         Inspecting for unsafe conditions       xv         Guidelines for servicing electrical equipment       xvi         Safety statements       xvii
About this guidexixConventions used in this guideKelated publicationsSummary of Changes for IBM BladeCenter S SASRAID Controller Module Host Systems AttachmentGuideGuideXxiHandling static-sensitive devices
Chapter 1. Chapter 1 Introduction 1 Introduction to host attachment
Introduction to IBM BladeCenter S SAS RAID Controller Module
IBM Storage Configuration Manager       .
SAS RAID Controller Command Line Firmware Update Package
RAID 3 Overview
Disk Drive Types
Logical configuration overview       10         IBM System Storage Multipath Subsystem Device         Driver       11         Host attachment path considerations       12
Serial Attached SCSI host attachment
on a System X or System P Host Blade 17 Considerations When Using a SAS Connectivity Card on an x86-64 blade or a PS / JS (System P)
Host Blade

Chapter 2. Chapter 2 x86-64 (Intel or	
AMD) blades Running Linux Host	
Attachment	19
Updating the Driver for SAS HBAs on x86-64 (Intel	
or AMD) Host Running Linux	20
Updating the Firmware and BIOS on a SAS	
Expansion Card on x86-64 (Intel or AMD) Host	
Running Linux	23
Configuring SAS Driver Settings on x86-64 (Intel or	
AMD) Host Running Linux	24
Changing Queue depth and Hot plug settings.	25
Configuring Host System Settings on x86-64 (Intel	
or AMD) Host Running Linux	26
Configuring the Device Mapper Multipathing	
Configuration File on x86-64 (Intel or AMD) Host	
Running Linux	28
Multipath.conf installation	28
Additional Settings for Red Hat Enterprise Linux	29
Additional Settings for SUSE Linux Enterprise	
Server	30
Multipath Configuration file setting	
considerations Linux HA Clustering	
Environments.	30
Configuration for Remote SAS Booting on x86-64	
(Intel or AMD) Host Running Linux	31
Operating system installation	31
Post-Operating system installation activities	32
RHEL Specific Instructions	32
SLES Specific Instructions	42
Troubleshooting	47
Concurrent controller maintenance procedure	47
Multipath verification in a SAS booted host	
running RHEL 6.2	48
Multipath verification in a SAS booted host	
$running SLES 11 SP3 \dots \dots \dots \dots \dots \dots \dots \dots$	49
Chapter 3. Chapter 3 x86-64 (Intel or	

# Chapter 3. Chapter 3 x86-64 (Intel or AMD) Blades Running Windows Host

Attachment
Updating the Driver for a SAS HBA on x86-64 (Intel
or AMD) Host Running Windows
Updating the Firmware and BIOS on a SAS
Expansion Card on x86-64 (Intel or AMD) Host
Running Windows
Configuring the SAS HBA Driver on x86-64 (Intel or
AMD) Host Running Windows 61
Changing Queue Depth for Microsoft Windows 61
Configuring SDD DSM on x86-64 (Intel or AMD)
Host Running Windows 62
Configuration for SAS Booting on x86-64 (Intel or
AMD) Host Running Windows
Operating system installation 64
Post-Operating system installation activities 64
System Configuration Settings for use with
Microsoft Windows Clustering

Configuring SAS HBA BIOS Settings	. 68
and SAS Expansion Card	. 69
Configuring blades with a boot disk	
connected through the SAS Expansion Card	. 72
Cord	75
Calu	. 75
	. 70
Disabling IGMP snooping through Telnet . Disabling IGMP snooping through a web	. 78
session	. 79
Private Network Setup	. 80
Modification of Windows Performance settings	. 80
How to make the policy changes	. 80
Chapter 4. Chapter 4 x86-64 (Intel or AMD) blades rupping VMware Host	
Awd) blades fulling vieware nost	05
	85
Updating the Driver for a SAS HBA on x86-64 (Intel	l
or AMD) Host Running VMware	. 85
Updating the FW/BIOS on a SAS Expansion Card	
on x86-64 (Intel or AMD) Host Running VMware	86
Configuring Host System Settings on x86-64 (Intel	. 00
or AMD) Host Dupping VM wars	00
or AMD) Host Running VMWare	. 89
Changing Queue Depth for VMware	. 89
Specific Instructions for VMware ESX/ESXi 5.1 .	. 92
Configuring Multipath on x86-64 (Intel or AMD)	
Host Running VMware	. 93
Configuration for SAS Booting on x86-64 (Intel or	
AMD) Host Running VMware	97
Operating system installation	
Dest On system installation a structure	
Post-Operating system installation activities	. 98
Verifying & Setting LUN Parameters on VMWare	
Guest Operating Systems running Linux	100
Verifying & Setting LUN Parameters on VMWare	
Guest Operating Systems running Microsoft	
Windows.	101
Troubleshooting	102
Congurrent Maintenance using the AMM	102
Concurrent Maintenance using the AMM	102
Chapter 5, Chapter 5 IBM Power	
Systems Bunning AIX / VIOS Host	
Attachment	405
	105
Updating the Driver for a SAS Expansion Card on	
an IBM Power Blade Running AIX / VIOS	106
Configuring Host System Settings on an IBM	
Power Blade Running AIX / VIOS	106
Changing Queue Depth and Hot plug settings	106
gring grove separation into ping betting	

Installing VIOS on a PS / JS blade with Remote	
Volumes	. 121
Creating a remote volume for the SAS boot	
installation	. 121
Installing VIOS to a Volume	. 124
Obtaining VIOS Fix Packs and Verifying the	100
Installation	. 128
Uptaining VIOS 1-fixes and verifying the	101
Obtaining the DC / IC (Desurer / Constant D) Least	. 131
Plade PIOS and Varifying the Installation	122
Installing CAS Integrated Controllor Firmwore for	. 155
IStaning SAS Integrated Controller Firmware for IS23/IS43 and PS700/PS701/PS702 Blados	138
Obtaining SAS Integrated Controller firmware	. 150
for IS23/IS43 and PS700/PS701/PS702 blades	138
Activating the SAS Integrated Controller	. 100
firmware	. 141
Verifying the installed firmware version	. 142
Installing the SAS Expansion Card Firmware for	
JS12 and JS22 blades	. 142
Obtaining SAS integrated controller microcode	
firmware for JS12 and JS22 blades	. 142
Activating the SAS Expansion Card firmware	145
Verifying the installed firmware version	. 146
	147
Appendix B. Appendix B: SAS Boot Pre-Operating System Installation Activities	157
Appendix B. Appendix B: SAS Boot Pre-Operating System Installation Activities	157
Appendix B. Appendix B: SAS BootPre-Operating System InstallationActivitiesActivitiesC. Appendix C: Procedurefor MPTSAS FW upgrade of HS12,HS21-XM, HS21, HS22, HS22V, HX5and LS20 bladesAppendix D. Getting help andtechnical assistance	157 161 165
Appendix B. Appendix B: SAS BootPre-Operating System InstallationActivitiesActivitiesC. Appendix C: Procedurefor MPTSAS FW upgrade of HS12,HS21-XM, HS21, HS22, HS22V, HX5and LS20 bladesAppendix D. Getting help andtechnical assistanceBefore you call	<b>157</b> <b>161</b> <b>165</b> . 165
Appendix B. Appendix B: SAS BootPre-Operating System InstallationActivitiesActivitiesComparisonAppendix C. Appendix C: Procedurefor MPTSAS FW upgrade of HS12,HS21-XM, HS21, HS22, HS22V, HX5and LS20 bladesAppendix D. Getting help andtechnical assistanceBefore you callUsing the documentation	<b>157</b> <b>161</b> <b>165</b> . 165 . 166
Appendix B. Appendix B: SAS Boot         Pre-Operating System Installation         Activities         Appendix C. Appendix C: Procedure         for MPTSAS FW upgrade of HS12,         HS21-XM, HS21, HS22, HS22V, HX5         and LS20 blades         Appendix D. Getting help and         technical assistance         Before you call         Using the documentation         Getting help and information from the World Wide	<b>157</b> <b>161</b> <b>165</b> . 165 . 166
Appendix B. Appendix B: SAS BootPre-Operating System InstallationActivitiesActivitiesAppendix C. Appendix C: Procedurefor MPTSAS FW upgrade of HS12,HS21-XM, HS21, HS22, HS22V, HX5and LS20 bladesAppendix D. Getting help andtechnical assistanceBefore you callUsing the documentationGetting help and information from the World WideWeb	<b>157</b> <b>161</b> <b>165</b> 165 166 166
Appendix B. Appendix B: SAS Boot         Pre-Operating System Installation         Activities         Appendix C. Appendix C: Procedure         for MPTSAS FW upgrade of HS12,         HS21-XM, HS21, HS22, HS22V, HX5         and LS20 blades         Appendix D. Getting help and         technical assistance         Using the documentation         Getting help and information from the World Wide         Web         How to send DSA data to IBM	<b>157</b> <b>161</b> <b>165</b> 166 166 166
Appendix B. Appendix B: SAS Boot         Pre-Operating System Installation         Activities         Appendix C. Appendix C: Procedure         for MPTSAS FW upgrade of HS12,         HS21-XM, HS21, HS22, HS22V, HX5         and LS20 blades         Appendix D. Getting help and         technical assistance         Using the documentation         Getting help and information from the World Wide         Web         How to send DSA data to IBM         Creating a personalized support web page	<b>157</b> <b>161</b> <b>165</b> 166 166 166 166
Appendix B. Appendix B: SAS Boot         Pre-Operating System Installation         Activities         Appendix C. Appendix C: Procedure         for MPTSAS FW upgrade of HS12,         HS21-XM, HS21, HS22, HS22V, HX5         and LS20 blades         Appendix D. Getting help and         technical assistance         Using the documentation         Getting help and information from the World Wide         Web         How to send DSA data to IBM         Creating a personalized support web page         Software service and support	<b>157</b> <b>161</b> <b>165</b> 165 166 166 166 167 167
Appendix B. Appendix B: SAS Boot         Pre-Operating System Installation         Activities         Appendix C. Appendix C: Procedure         for MPTSAS FW upgrade of HS12,         HS21-XM, HS21, HS22, HS22V, HX5         and LS20 blades         Appendix D. Getting help and         technical assistance         Using the documentation         Getting help and information from the World Wide         Web         How to send DSA data to IBM         Creating a personalized support web page         Software service and support	<b>157</b> <b>161</b> <b>165</b> 165 166 166 166 167 167
Appendix B. Appendix B: SAS Boot         Pre-Operating System Installation         Activities         Appendix C. Appendix C: Procedure         for MPTSAS FW upgrade of HS12,         HS21-XM, HS21, HS22, HS22V, HX5         and LS20 blades         Appendix D. Getting help and         technical assistance         Using the documentation         Getting help and information from the World Wide         Web         How to send DSA data to IBM         Creating a personalized support web page         Software service and support         Hardware service and support	<b>157</b> <b>161</b> <b>165</b> 165 166 166 166 167 167 167
Appendix B. Appendix B: SAS Boot         Pre-Operating System Installation         Activities         Appendix C. Appendix C: Procedure         for MPTSAS FW upgrade of HS12,         HS21-XM, HS21, HS22, HS22V, HX5         and LS20 blades         Appendix D. Getting help and         technical assistance         Before you call         Using the documentation         Getting help and information from the World Wide         Web         How to send DSA data to IBM         Creating a personalized support web page         Software service and support         Hardware service and support	<b>157</b> <b>161</b> <b>165</b> 165 166 166 167 167 167
Appendix B. Appendix B: SAS Boot         Pre-Operating System Installation         Activities         Appendix C. Appendix C: Procedure         for MPTSAS FW upgrade of HS12,         HS21-XM, HS21, HS22, HS22V, HX5         and LS20 blades         Appendix D. Getting help and         technical assistance         Before you call         Using the documentation         Getting help and information from the World Wide         Web         How to send DSA data to IBM         Creating a personalized support web page         Software service and support         Hardware service and support         BM Taiwan product service	<b>157</b> <b>161</b> <b>165</b> 165 166 166 167 167 167 167
Appendix B. Appendix B: SAS Boot         Pre-Operating System Installation         Activities         Appendix C. Appendix C: Procedure         for MPTSAS FW upgrade of HS12,         HS21-XM, HS21, HS22, HS22V, HX5         and LS20 blades         Appendix D. Getting help and         technical assistance         Using the documentation         Getting help and information from the World Wide         Web         How to send DSA data to IBM         Creating a personalized support web page         Software service and support         Hardware service and support         IBM Taiwan product service	<b>157</b> <b>161</b> <b>165</b> 166 166 166 167 167 167 167 167
Appendix B. Appendix B: SAS Boot         Pre-Operating System Installation         Activities         Appendix C. Appendix C: Procedure         for MPTSAS FW upgrade of HS12,         HS21-XM, HS21, HS22, HS22V, HX5         and LS20 blades         Appendix D. Getting help and         technical assistance         Before you call         Using the documentation         Getting help and information from the World Wide         Web         How to send DSA data to IBM         Creating a personalized support web page         Software service and support         Hardware service and support         IBM Taiwan product service         Important notes	<b>157</b> <b>161</b> <b>165</b> 166 166 166 167 167 167 167 <b>167</b> 167 167 167 170 170
Appendix B. Appendix B: SAS Boot         Pre-Operating System Installation         Activities         Appendix C. Appendix C: Procedure         for MPTSAS FW upgrade of HS12,         HS21-XM, HS21, HS22, HS22V, HX5         and LS20 blades         Appendix D. Getting help and         technical assistance         Using the documentation         Getting help and information from the World Wide         Web         How to send DSA data to IBM         Creating a personalized support web page         Software service and support         Hardware service and support         Trademarks         Important notes         Particulate contamination	<b>157</b> <b>161</b> <b>165</b> 166 166 166 167 167 167 <b>167</b> 167 <b>167</b> 167 167 171 171 172
Appendix B. Appendix B: SAS Boot         Pre-Operating System Installation         Activities         Appendix C. Appendix C: Procedure         for MPTSAS FW upgrade of HS12,         HS21-XM, HS21, HS22, HS22V, HX5         and LS20 blades         Appendix D. Getting help and         technical assistance         Using the documentation         Getting help and information from the World Wide         Web         How to send DSA data to IBM         Creating a personalized support         Hardware service and support         Hardware service and support         IBM Taiwan product service         Particulate contamination         Particulate contamination	<b>157</b> <b>161</b> <b>165</b> 166 166 166 167 167 167 <b>167</b> 167 <b>167</b> 167 <b>167</b> 167 167 171 172 173
Appendix B. Appendix B: SAS Boot         Pre-Operating System Installation         Activities         Appendix C. Appendix C: Procedure         for MPTSAS FW upgrade of HS12,         HS21-XM, HS21, HS22, HS22V, HX5         and LS20 blades         Appendix D. Getting help and         technical assistance         Using the documentation         Getting help and information from the World Wide         Web         How to send DSA data to IBM         Creating a personalized support         Hardware service and support         Hardware service and support         IBM Taiwan product service         Particulate contamination         Particulate contamination         Particulate contamination	<b>157</b> <b>161</b> <b>165</b> 166 166 166 167 167 167 167 167

119

Configuring SDD PCM on an IBM Power Blade

Configuration for SAS Booting on an IBM Power Creating a SAS RAID Module volume for the 

Obtaining AIX 6.1 Service Packs and Verifying the

Obtaining AIX APARs and Verifying the

Installing AIX 6.1 on a remote volume . . . 110

Checking System hdisk (volume) Status on AIX

Federal Communications Commission (FCC)

statement		173					
Industry Canada Class A emission compliance							
statement		174					
Avis de conformité à la réglementation							
d'Industrie Canada		174					
Australia and New Zealand Class A statement		174					
European Union EMC Directive conformance							
statement		174					
Germany Class A statement		175					
Japan VCCI Class A statement.		176					

Korea Communications Commission (KCC)	
statement	176
Russia Electromagnetic Interference (EMI) Class	
A statement	176
People's Republic of China Class A electronic	
emission statement	176
Taiwan Class A compliance statement	177
Index	179

# Figures

2. Logical Configuration Overview       11         3. Example of Product Family Search       21         4. Example of Linux driver update       22         6. Example of BIOS Discovery       23         7. Example output from Linux firmware update       24         8. Linux timeout settings       26         9. Sample scsi_id output       32         10. Sample scsi_id output in RHEL 6.2.       32         11. A sample of the /var/lib/multipath/bindings file.       33         12. A sample of the /etc/multipath/bindings file.       33         13. A sample adding the WWID in the/etc/multipath/wwids file       33         14. A modified /etc/fstab file when not using LVM       34         15. df command       34         16. swapon -s       34         17. Another example of modified /etc/fstab file when not using LVM       35         18. A modified /etc/fstab file when using LVM       35         19. A snippet of the modified /boot/grub/ menu.lst file when not using LVM in RHEL5.7       39         22. A sample of the modified /boot/grub/ menu.lst file when not using LVM       39         23. A sample of the modified /boot/grub/ menu.lst file when using LVM       39         24. The multipath_command_produces_output       40         25. The output with LVM       40         26	1.	Diagram of IBM BladeCenter S Chassis	. 3
3. Example of Product Family Search.       21         4. Example of Linux driver update       21         5. Example of Linux output after driver update       22         6. Example of BIOS Discovery       23         7. Example output from Linux firmware update       24         8. Linux timeout settings       22         10. Sample scsi_id output in RHEL 6.2       32         11. A sample of the /var/lib/multipath/bindings file.       33         12. A sample of the /etc/multipath/bindings file.       33         13. A sample of the /etc/multipath/bindings file.       33         14. A modified /etc/fstab file when not using LVM       34         15. df command       34         16. swapon -s       34         17. Another example of modified /etc/fstab file when not using LVM       35         18. A modified /etc/fstab file when using LVM       35         19. A snippet of the modified /boot/grub/       39         22. A sample of the modified /boot/grub/       39         23. A sample of the modified /boot/grub/       39         24. A sample of the modified /boot/grub/       40         25. The output with LVM       40         26. The output with UVM       40         27. The multipath_command_produces_output       40         28. A sample o	2.	Logical Configuration Overview	11
4. Example of Linux driver update       21         5. Example of Linux output after driver update       22         6. Example of BIOS Discovery       23         7. Example output from Linux firmware update       24         8. Linux timeout settings       26         9. Sample scsi_id output       32         10. Sample scsi_id output in RHEL 6.2.       32         210. Sample of the /var/lib/multipath/bindings file.       33         211. A sample of the /etc/multipath/bindings file.       33         212. A sample of the /etc/multipath/bindings file.       33         213. A sample adding the WWID in the/etc/multipath/wwids file       33         12. A formand       34         13. A somple of the /etc/fstab file when not using LVM       34         15. df command       34         16. swapon -s.       34         17. Another example of modified /etc/fstab file when not using LVM       35         18. A modified /etc/fstab file when using LVM       35         19. A snippet of the modified /boot/grub/ menu.lst file when not using LVM       37         20. The result at line 1330       39         21. A sample of the modified /boot/grub/ menu.lst file when using LVM       39         22. A sample of the modified /boot/grub/ menu.lst file when not using LVM       39         23	3.	Example of Product Family Search	21
5. Example of Linux output after driver update       22         6. Example of BIOS Discovery       23         7. Example output from Linux firmware update       24         8. Linux timeout settings       26         9. Sample scsi_id output in RHEL 6.2.       32         10. Sample scsi_id output in RHEL 6.2.       32         11. A sample of the /var/lib/multipath/bindings file.       33         12. A sample of the /etc/multipath/bindings file.       33         13. A sample adding the WWID in the/etc/multipath/wwids file       33         14. A modified /etc/fstab file when not using LVM       34         15. df command       34         16. swapon -s       34         17. Another example of modified /etc/fstab file when not using LVM       35         18. A modified /etc/fstab file when using LVM       35         19. A snippet of the modified /etc/lvm/lvm.conf file       37         20. The result at line 1330       38         21. Modified /boot/grub/menu.lst file when not using LVM       39         22. A sample of the modified /boot/grub/menu.lst file when not using LVM       39         23. A sample of the modified /boot/grub/menu.lst file when not using LVM       39         24. The multipath_command_produces_output       40         25. The output with LVM       40	4.	Example of Linux driver update	21
6. Example of BIOS Discovery       23         7. Example output from Linux firmware update       24         8. Linux timeout settings       26         9. Sample scsi_id output       32         10. Sample scsi_id output in RHEL 6.2.       32         11. A sample of the /var/lib/multipath/bindings file.       33         12. A sample of the /etc/multipath/bindings file.       33         13. A sample adding the WWID in the/etc/multipath/wwids file       33         14. A modified /etc/fstab file when not using LVM       34         15. df command       34         16. swapon =s       34         17. Another example of modified /etc/fstab file when not using LVM       35         18. A modified /etc/fstab file when using LVM       35         18. A modified /boot/grub/menu.lst file when not using LVM for RHEL5.7       39         20. The result at line 1330       39         21. Modified /boot/grub/menu.lst file when not using LVM for RHEL5.7       39         22. A sample of the modified /boot/grub/menu.lst file when not using LVM .       39         23. A sample of the modified /boot/grub/menu.lst file when not using LVM .       39         24. The multipath_command_produces_output       40         25. The output with LVM .       40         26. The output of scsi_id command for SLES       11.1	5.	Example of Linux output after driver update	22
7.Example output from Linux firmware update248.Linux timeout settings	6.	Example of BIOS Discovery	23
8. Linux timeout settings       26         9. Sample scsi_id output in RHEL 6.2.       32         10. Sample scsi_id output in RHEL 6.2.       32         11. A sample of the /var/lib/multipath/bindings file.       33         12. A sample of the /etc/multipath/bindings file.       33         13. A sample of the /etc/multipath/bindings file.       33         14. A modified /etc/fstab file when not using LVM       34         15. df command       34         16. swapon -s       34         17. Another example of modified /etc/fstab file when not using LVM       35         18. A modified /etc/fstab file when using LVM       35         19. A snippet of the modified /etc/lvm/lvm.conf file       37         20. The result at line 1330       38         21. Modified /boot/grub/menu.lst file when not using LVM for RHEL5.7       39         22. A sample of the modified /boot/grub/menu.lst file when not using LVM .       39         23. A sample of the modified /boot/grub/menu.lst file when using LVM .       39         24. The multipath_command_produces_output       40         25. The output without LVM .       40         26. The output without LVM .       41         28. Asimple output of scsi_id command for SLES       10.         39. A simple of the modified /etc/multipath.comf in SLES .       42	7.	Example output from Linux firmware update	24
9. Sample scsi_id output in RHEL 6.2.	8.	Linux timeout settings	26
10. Sample scsi_id output in RHEL 6.2.	9.	Sample scsi_id output	32
11. A sample of the /var/lib/multipath/bindings file.	10.	Sample scsi_id output in RHEL 6.2	32
file.       33         12. A sample of the /etc/multipath/bindings file.       33         13. A sample adding the WWID in       the/etc/multipath/wwids file       33         14. A modified /etc/fstab file when not using       11         15. df command       34         16. swapon -s       34         17. Another example of modified /etc/fstab file       when not using LVM       35         18. A modified /etc/fstab file when using LVM       35         19. A snippet of the modified /etc/lvm/lvm.conf       71         file       .       .       .         70. The result at line 1330       .       .       .         71. Modified /boot/grub/menu.lst file when not       using LVM for RHEL5.7       .       .         720. The result at line 1330       .       .       .       .         721. Modified /boot/grub/menu.lst file when not using LVM for RHEL5.7       .       .       .         722. A sample of the modified /boot/grub/       menu.lst file when using LVM .       .       .       .         722. The output with LVM       .       .       .       .       .         739       23. A sample of the modified /boot/grub/       .       .       .       .         742. The multipath_command	11.	A sample of the /var/lib/multipath/bindings	
12. A sample of the /etc/multipath/bindings file.       33         13. A sample adding the WWID in the/etc/multipath/wwids file		file	33
<ul> <li>13. A sample adding the WWID in the/etc/multipath/wwids file</li></ul>	12.	A sample of the /etc/multipath/bindings file.	33
the/etc/multipath/wwids file	13.	A sample adding the WWID in	
14. A modified /etc/fstab file when not using LVM.		the/etc/multipath/wwids file	33
LVM.	14.	A modified /etc/fstab file when not using	
15. df command		LVM	34
16. swapon -s.	15.	df command	34
<ol> <li>Another example of modified /etc/fstab file when not using LVM</li></ol>	16.	swapon –s	34
when not using LVM	17.	Another example of modified /etc/fstab file	
<ul> <li>18. A modified /etc/fstab file when using LVM 35</li> <li>19. A snippet of the modified /etc/lvm/lvm.conf file</li></ul>		when not using LVM	35
<ol> <li>A snippet of the modified /etc/lvm/lvm.conf file</li></ol>	18.	A modified /etc/fstab file when using LVM	35
file	19.	A snippet of the modified /etc/lvm/lvm.conf	
<ol> <li>The result at line 1330</li></ol>		file	37
<ol> <li>Modified /boot/grub/menu.lst file when not using LVM for RHEL5.7</li></ol>	20.	The result at line 1330	38
using LVM for RHEL5.7	21.	Modified /boot/grub/menu.lst file when not	
<ul> <li>22. A sample of the modified /boot/grub/ menu.lst file when not using LVM</li></ul>		using LVM for RHEL5.7	39
menu.lst file when not using LVM	22.	A sample of the modified /boot/grub/	
<ul> <li>23. A sample of the modified /boot/grub/ menu.lst file when using LVM</li></ul>		menu.lst file when not using LVM	39
menu.lst file when using LVM	23.	A sample of the modified /boot/grub/	
<ul> <li>24. The multipath_command_produces_output 40</li> <li>25. The output with LVM</li></ul>	~ 1	menu.lst file when using LVM	39
<ul> <li>25. The output with LVM</li></ul>	24.	The multipath_command_produces_output	40
<ul> <li>26. The output without LVM</li></ul>	25.	The output with LVM	40
<ol> <li>27. The multipath -II command</li></ol>	26.	The output without LVM	40
<ul> <li>28. More than one volume - multipath command 41</li> <li>29. A snippet of the modified /etc/multipath.conf in SLES</li></ul>	27.	The multipath –II command	41
<ul> <li>29. A snippet of the modified /etc/multipath.conf in SLES</li></ul>	28.	More than one volume - multipath command	41
10       11       10       10       11       10       10       11       10       10       11       10       10       11       10       10       11       10       11       10       11       10       11 <td< td=""><td>29.</td><td>A snippet of the modified /etc/multipath.conf</td><td>40</td></td<>	29.	A snippet of the modified /etc/multipath.conf	40
30. Example output of scsi_id command for SLES         10	20	IN SLES.	42
10.       10.       11.       1	50.	Example output of scsi_id command for SLES	42
31. Example output of scsi_id command for SLES         11.1	21	Example output of acci id command for SLES	42
<ul> <li>32. Example output of scsi_id command for SLES 11.2</li></ul>	51.	11 1	12
11.2	32	Example output of scsi id command for SLES	74
<ul> <li>33. Example output of scsi_id command for SLES <ul> <li>11.3</li> <li>11.4</li> <li>11.5</li> <li>11.5<td>02.</td><td>11 2</td><td>43</td></li></ul></li></ul>	02.	11 2	43
<ul> <li>11.3</li></ul>	33	Example output of scsi id command for SLES	-10
<ul> <li>34. Example edit of multipath bindings file</li> <li>35. A snippet of the modified /etc/sysconfig/kernel file.</li> <li>43</li> <li>36. An example of /etc/fstab file in SLES10</li> <li>44</li> <li>37. A sample of the modified /boot/grub/ menu.lst in SLES 10.</li> <li>45</li> <li>38. Example output for checking SLES multipath configuration.</li> <li>46</li> <li>39. The multipath –ll command</li> <li>44</li> </ul>	00.	11.3	43
<ul> <li>35. A snippet of the modified /etc/sysconfig/kernel file</li></ul>	34.	Example edit of multipath bindings file	43
<ul> <li>/etc/sysconfig/kernel file</li></ul>	35.	A snippet of the modified	10
<ul> <li>36. An example of /etc/fstab file in SLES10</li> <li>37. A sample of the modified /boot/grub/ menu.lst in SLES 10</li></ul>		/etc/sysconfig/kernel file	43
<ul> <li>37. A sample of the modified /boot/grub/ menu.lst in SLES 10</li></ul>	36.	An example of /etc/fstab file in SLES10	44
menu.lst in SLES 10	37.	A sample of the modified /boot/grub/	
<ul> <li>38. Example output for checking SLES multipath configuration</li></ul>		menu.lst in SLES 10.	45
configuration	38.	Example output for checking SLES multipath	
39. The multipath –ll command		configuration	46
	39.	The multipath –ll command	46

40.	More than one volume mapped to the blade	
	server-the multipath –ll command	47
41.	Commands	47
42.	Example of Product Family Search	52
43.	Example firmware file	52
44.	Select Perform Update	53
45.	Click Update	54
46.	Click on the Exit button	55
47.	To verify the level right	56
48.	Example of the Windows driver version	56
49.	Example of Product Family Search	58
50.	Enclosed three files	58
51.	ibm fw mptsas bc-sasexp-2.62 windows 32-	
	64.exe	59
52.	Select Perform Update	59
53.	Example of screen output during firmware	
	update	60
54.	Example of BIOS version	60
55	Example Registry Settings Screen for Windows	62
56	Example of datapath query version command	63
57	Subsystem device driver DSM command	00
57.	prompt window - datapath query	
	device /version	65
58	Computer Management window showing SAS	05
50.	RAID Controller Module volumes in Windows	
	Sorver 2008 /2012 bests	66
50	Server 2006/2012 HOSIS	00
39.	All example of \first NAChine	
	STSTEM CurrentControiset Services (disk (	66
(0	Commuter Management window aboving CAC	00
60.	Computer Management window showing SAS	
	Camer 2002 hasts	$\overline{\mathbf{n}}$
(1	Server 2003 nosts.	67
61.	Example of a nung boot screen	68
62.	Adapter List screen showing Onboard SAS	(0
()	Controller and SAS Expansion Card	69
63.	Disabling boot support for the SAS Expansion	70
<i>(</i> <b>)</b>	Card	70
64.	Saving configuration changes for the SAS	=0
	Expansion Card	70
65.	Setting boot order to 0 for Onboard SAS	-
	Controller	71
66.	Saving the BIOS setting and rebooting	71
67.	Devices and I/O Ports screen	72
68.	Adapter List screen showing SAS Expansion	
	Card	73
69.	Adapter Properties screen showing enabled	
	BIOS and OS boot support	73
70.	Advanced Adapter Properties screen	74
71.	Advanced Device Properties screen	75
72.	Adapter List screen showing the Onboard SAS	
	Controller	76
73.	Adapter Properties screen for the Onboard	
	SAS Controller	76
74.	Advanced Adapter Properties screen	77
75.	Advanced Device Properties screen	77

76.	Saving configuration changes for the Onboard SAS Controller	3
77.	Computer Management / Disk Management	Í
78.	Windows Server 2003 Policy window with	
79.	Windows Server 2008/2012 Policy window	<u> </u>
	with correct settings	5
80.	Example of Product Family Search 87	/
81.	Example of SAS HBA firmware floppy disk	
	boot	3
82.	Example of SAS HBA BIOS version 88	3
83.	Dynamic queue setting in ESXi graphical user	
	interface	L
84.	UserVars/	
	CIMvmw lsiproviderProviderEnabled is 1 92	<u>,</u>
85.	/UserVars/	
00.	CIMvmw IsiproviderProviderEnabled is 0	3
86	Commands 93	Ś
87	Commands 03	ź
07. 00	Example of SCM preferred path view	, 1
80. 80		t ;
09.	Example of VM syster EEV and EEV; 2 E manage	,
90.	Example of visiware ESA and ESAI 5.5 manage	-
01		)
91.	Example of VMware 4.x / 5.x manage paths	-
	Dialog	<i>'</i>
92.	Example VMware Dialog showing rescan	
	option	3
93.	Example of VMware Dialog showing active	
	preferred path	)
94.	VMWare Linux timeout and queue depth	
	settings	)
95.	Example Registry Settings Screen for	
	Windows	2
96.	Perform a rescan usingVMware vSphere to	
	restore the redundant paths	3
97.	Example SAS Switch phy output 109	)
98.	Reboot screen with option to enter SMS menu 111	Ĺ
99.	The SMS Main Menu	Ĺ
100.	An SMS menu showing a list of CD and DVD	
	devices	<u>,</u>
101.	Define the system console for the AIX	
	installation	2
102.	Installation and Setting screen of the AIX	
	installation	3
103.	Example from a IS22 blade without an	
	internal hard drive	3
104.	Updated Installation and Settings screen of	
	the AIX installation 114	1
105	6100-03-01-0921 fix pack	5
106	6100-03 Service Pack 1	ŝ
100.	Package download page	ś
102	Select how to download the Service Pack 114	ś
100.	oelevel _e 115	, 7
1102.	emar_l command results	2
110. 111	emer l command results after reheat	י ג
111. 110	The status of an h dish	′ \
112.	The status of an nulsk $\ldots$ $\ldots$ $\ldots$ $\ldots$ $120$	,
113.	heating a helial V and a l	•
11.4	bootinfo –s hdiskX command	ļ
114.	bootinfo -s hdiskX command	L 3
114. 115.	bootinfo -s hdiskX command	3

117.	USB CD-ROM - device 3	126
118.	System console	126
119.	System backup Installation Summary	127
120.	Installing base dperating system	127
121.	Fix Central search page	129
122.	Example of VIOS code link	129
123.	VIOS V2.1 Fix Pack	129
124.	Fix Pack 21	130
125.	Example list of fix packs	130
126.	ioslevel	130
127.	ioslevle - FP21	131
128.	VIOS update package.	131
129.	emgr –l command results	132
130.	emgr –I command results after reboot	132
131.	Display the current firmware level on the AIX	400
100		133
132.	Display the current firmware level on the AIX	100
100	$PS/Ux \ blade \ . \ . \ . \ . \ . \ . \ . \ . \ . \ $	133
133.	Support Portal View	134
134.	Fix Central View	134
135.	Fix Central Search Criteria Example	135
136.	Selected fixes example	136
137.	Download options example	136
138.	AIX terminal window showing results of	107
120	Ismcod command	137
139.	PS/0x AIX terminal window showing results	107
1.10	of Ismcod command	137
140.	Support and Downlaod example	138
141.	Fix central download example	139
142.	Example showing recent code updates for the	140
140	Selected blade type.	140
143.	Example SAS Integrated Controller firmware	140
1 1 1	Colort the recourse to apply the firmation	140
144.	A massage approach in digating the firmware	141
143.	installed successfully	140
1/16	Example showing recent code updates for the	144
140.	selected blade type	143
147	Download page for code undate	110
1 17 .	v00105000 1004912584	144
148.	AIX terminal window showing results of ls -l	
110.	command, including firmware file	144
149.	Select the resource to apply the firmware	145
150.	Message indicating that the firmware	
	installed successful	146
151.	Add boot option	148
152.	Legacy only $\ldots$ $\ldots$ $\ldots$ $\ldots$ $\ldots$ $\ldots$	148
153.	Legacy only	149
154.	Example Boot Screen	150
155.	Screen where Ctrl-C must be pressed to enter	
	SAS configuration menu.	150
156.	Blade with Internal SAS Planer enabled and	
	SAS Daughter card	151
157.	Setting Advanced Adapter Properties	152
158.	Setting for Block Device Timeouts	152
159.	Selecting the Adpater Timing Properties	
	menu option.	153
160.	SAS 1064 adapter timing properties for Linux	154
161.	SAS 2004 adapter timing properties for Linux	154
162.	SAS 1064 Adapter timing properties for	
	Windows	155

163.	SAS 2004 Adapter timing properties for		
	Windows	. 1	55
164.	SAS Adapter timing properties for VMware	1	56
165.	Saving the BIOS setting and rebooting	1	56
166.	sasport status all command output	. 1	59

167.	MPT SAS BIOS	de	vic	e so	can	res	sult	t.			160
168.	LUNs Mapped										162
169.	LUNs Mapped										163
170.	LUNs Mapped										164

## **Tables**

- 1. Hosts that are supported by the SAS RAID
- 2.
- Maximum Supported LUNs per host operating 3.
- 4. Maximum Supported Queue per host 5.

## Safety

Before installing this product, read the Safety Information.

## قبل تركيب هذا المنتج، يجب قراءة الملاحظات الأمنية

Antes de instalar este produto, leia as Informações de Segurança.

# 在安装本产品之前,请仔细阅读 Safety Information (安全信息)。

安裝本產品之前,請先閱讀「安全資訊」。

Prije instalacije ovog produkta obavezno pročitajte Sigurnosne Upute.

Před instalací tohoto produktu si přečtěte příručku bezpečnostních instrukcí.

Læs sikkerhedsforskrifterne, før du installerer dette produkt.

Lees voordat u dit product installeert eerst de veiligheidsvoorschriften.

Ennen kuin asennat tämän tuotteen, lue turvaohjeet kohdasta Safety Information.

Avant d'installer ce produit, lisez les consignes de sécurité.

Vor der Installation dieses Produkts die Sicherheitshinweise lesen.

Πριν εγκαταστήσετε το προϊόν αυτό, διαβάστε τις πληροφορίες ασφάλειας (safety information).

לפני שתתקינו מוצר זה, קראו את הוראות הבטיחות.

A termék telepítése előtt olvassa el a Biztonsági előírásokat!

Prima di installare questo prodotto, leggere le Informazioni sulla Sicurezza.

製品の設置の前に、安全情報をお読みください。

본 제품을 설치하기 전에 안전 정보를 읽으십시오.

Пред да се инсталира овој продукт, прочитајте информацијата за безбедност.

#### بندع میدورباد . معدورباد . معدورباد . معدورباد . معدورباد . معدورباد . معدورباد .

Les sikkerhetsinformasjonen (Safety Information) før du installerer dette produktet.

Przed zainstalowaniem tego produktu, należy zapoznać się z książką "Informacje dotyczące bezpieczeństwa" (Safety Information).

Antes de instalar este produto, leia as Informações sobre Segurança.

Перед установкой продукта прочтите инструкции по технике безопасности.

Pred inštaláciou tohto zariadenia si pečítaje Bezpečnostné predpisy.

Pred namestitvijo tega proizvoda preberite Varnostne informacije.

Antes de instalar este producto, lea la información de seguridad.

Läs säkerhetsinformationen innan du installerar den här produkten.

Bu ürünü kurmadan önce güvenlik bilgilerini okuyun.

مەزكۇر مەھسۇلاتنى ئورنىتىشتىن بۇرۇن بىخەتەرلىك ئۇچۇرلىرىنى ئوقۇپ چىقىڭ.

Youq mwngz yungh canjbinj neix gaxgonq, itdingh aeu doeg aen canjbinj soengq cungj vahgangj ancien siusik.

## Guidelines for trained service technicians

This section contains information for trained service technicians.

## Inspecting for unsafe conditions

Use this information to help you identify potential unsafe conditions in that you are working on.

, as it was designed and manufactured, has required safety items to protect users and service technicians from injury. The information in this section addresses only those items. Use good judgment to identify potential unsafe conditions that might be caused by alterations or attachment of features or optional devices that are not addressed in this section. If you identify an unsafe condition, you must determine how serious the hazard is and whether you must correct the problem before you work on the product.

Consider the following conditions and the safety hazards that they present:

- Electrical hazards, especially primary power. Primary voltage on the frame can cause serious or fatal electrical shock.
- Explosive hazards, such as a damaged CRT face or a bulging capacitor.
- Mechanical hazards, such as loose or missing hardware.

To inspect the product for potential unsafe conditions, complete the following steps:

- 1. Make sure that the power is off and the power cords are disconnected.
- 2. Make sure that the exterior cover is not damaged, loose, or broken, and observe any sharp edges.
- 3. Check the power cords:
  - Make sure that the third-wire ground connector is in good condition. Use a meter to measure third-wire ground continuity for 0.1 ohm or less between the external ground pin and the frame ground.
  - Make sure that the power cords are the correct type.
  - Make sure that the insulation is not frayed or worn.
- 4. Remove the cover.
- **5**. Check for any obvious alterations. Use good judgment as to the safety of any alterations.
- 6. Check inside the system for any obvious unsafe conditions, such as metal filings, contamination, water or other liquid, or signs of fire or smoke damage.
- 7. Check for worn, frayed, or pinched cables.
- 8. Make sure that the power-supply cover fasteners (screws or rivets) have not been removed or tampered with.

## Guidelines for servicing electrical equipment

Observe these guidelines when you service electrical equipment.

- Check the area for electrical hazards such as moist floors, nongrounded power extension cords, and missing safety grounds.
- Use only approved tools and test equipment. Some hand tools have handles that are covered with a soft material that does not provide insulation from live electrical current.
- Regularly inspect and maintain your electrical hand tools for safe operational condition. Do not use worn or broken tools or testers.
- Do not touch the reflective surface of a dental mirror to a live electrical circuit. The surface is conductive and can cause personal injury or equipment damage if it touches a live electrical circuit.
- Some rubber floor mats contain small conductive fibers to decrease electrostatic discharge. Do not use this type of mat to protect yourself from electrical shock.
- Do not work alone under hazardous conditions or near equipment that has hazardous voltages.
- Locate the emergency power-off (EPO) switch, disconnecting switch, or electrical outlet so that you can turn off the power quickly in the event of an electrical accident.
- Disconnect all power before you perform a mechanical inspection, work near power supplies, or remove or install main units.
- Before you work on the equipment, disconnect the power cord. If you cannot disconnect the power cord, have the customer power-off the wall box that supplies power to the equipment and lock the wall box in the off position.
- Never assume that power has been disconnected from a circuit. Check it to make sure that it has been disconnected.
- If you have to work on equipment that has exposed electrical circuits, observe the following precautions:
  - Make sure that another person who is familiar with the power-off controls is near you and is available to turn off the power if necessary.
  - When you work with powered-on electrical equipment, use only one hand. Keep the other hand in your pocket or behind your back to avoid creating a complete circuit that could cause an electrical shock.
  - When you use a tester, set the controls correctly and use the approved probe leads and accessories for that tester.
  - Stand on a suitable rubber mat to insulate you from grounds such as metal floor strips and equipment frames.
- Use extreme care when you measure high voltages.
- To ensure proper grounding of components such as power supplies, pumps, blowers, fans, and motor generators, do not service these components outside of their normal operating locations.
- If an electrical accident occurs, use caution, turn off the power, and send another person to get medical aid.

## Safety statements

These statements provide the caution and danger information that is used in this documentation.

#### **Important:**

Each caution and danger statement in this documentation is labeled with a number. This number is used to cross reference an English-language caution or danger statement with translated versions of the caution or danger statement in the *Safety Information* document.

For example, if a caution statement is labeled "Statement 1," translations for that caution statement are in the *Safety Information* document under "Statement 1."

Be sure to read all caution and danger statements in this documentation before you perform the procedures. Read any additional safety information that comes with your system or optional device before you install the device.

#### Statement 1



#### DANGER

Electrical current from power, telephone, and communication cables is hazardous.

To avoid a shock hazard:

- Do not connect or disconnect any cables or perform installation, maintenance, or reconfiguration of this product during an electrical storm.
- Connect all power cords to a properly wired and grounded electrical outlet.
- Connect to properly wired outlets any equipment that will be attached to this product.
- When possible, use one hand only to connect or disconnect signal cables.
- Never turn on any equipment when there is evidence of fire, water, or structural damage.
- Disconnect the attached power cords, telecommunications systems, networks, and modems before you open the device covers, unless instructed otherwise in the installation and configuration procedures.
- Connect and disconnect cables as described in the following table when installing, moving, or opening covers on this product or attached devices.

#### To Connect:

- 1. Turn everything OFF.
- 2. First, attach all cables to devices.
- **3**. Attach signal cables to connectors.
- 4. Attach power cords to outlet.
- 5. Turn device ON.

#### To Disconnect:

- 1. Turn everything OFF.
- 2. First, remove power cords from outlet.
- **3**. Remove signal cables from connectors.
- 4. Remove all cables from devices.

#### Statement 2



#### **CAUTION:**

When replacing the lithium battery, use only IBM<sup>®</sup> Part Number 33F8354 or an equivalent type battery recommended by the manufacturer. If your system has a module containing a lithium battery, replace it only with the same module type made by the same manufacturer. The battery contains lithium and can explode if not properly used, handled, or disposed of.

#### Do not:

- Throw or immerse into water
- Heat to more than 100°C (212°F)
- Repair or disassemble

Dispose of the battery as required by local ordinances or regulations.

#### Statement 21



CAUTION:

Hazardous energy is present when the blade is connected to the power source. Always replace the blade cover before installing the blade.

## About this guide

This guide provides information about attaching hosts to the SAS RAID Controller Module in the BladeCenter S Chassis. The first chapter provides an overview of host attachment concepts, specific considerations that affect more than one host, and an introduction to the SAS RAID Controller Module. Each subsequent chapter provides information on a specific host. Table 1 lists the hosts that you can attach to your storage unit and provides a link to the chapter for each host.

For the most current information on supported hosts and operating systems, review the interoperability information at:

http://www.ibm.com/systems/support/supportsite.wss/ docdisplay?lndocid=MIGR-5078491&brandind=5000020

Host	Chapter
Linux	Chapter 2, "Chapter 2 x86-64 (Intel or AMD) blades Running Linux Host Attachment," on page 19
Windows	Chapter 3, "Chapter 3 x86-64 (Intel or AMD) Blades Running Windows Host Attachment," on page 51
VMware	Chapter 4, "Chapter 4 x86-64 (Intel or AMD) blades running VMware Host Attachment," on page 85
AIX / VIOS	Chapter 5, "Chapter 5 IBM Power Systems Running AIX / VIOS Host Attachment," on page 105

Table 1. Hosts that are supported by the SAS RAID Controller Module

## Conventions used in this guide

The following typefaces are used to show emphasis:

#### boldface

Text in **boldface** represents menu items and lowercase or mixed-case command names.

Italics

Text in *italics* is used to emphasize a word. In command syntax, it is used for variables for which you supply actual values. monospace

Text in monospace identifies the data or commands that you type, samples of command output, or examples of program code or messages from the system.

## **Related publications**

This section details additional documentation sources. These installation sections are provided in Portable Document Format (PDF) on the support CD that came with your RAID Controller.

Additional related documentation might be included on the support CD or available on the IBM support Web site, http://www.ibm.com/systems/support/, along with the following related documentation:

- IBM BladeCenter *Installation and User's Guide* contains setup and installation instructions for your IBM BladeCenter S chassis, including information about getting started and how to install a blade server.
- IBM BladeCenter blade server *Installation and User's Guides* Each type of blade server has a customized *Installation and User's Guide* that is provided in PDF on the IBM BladeCenter Documentation CD and at the IBM support site .
- *The SAS Expansion Card (CFFv) for IBM BladeCenter Installation and User's Guide* for IBM BladeCenter products contains installation instructions for the SAS Expansion Card. It also contains information about using the Configuration Utility program to configure the SAS Expansion Card.
- *Multilingual Safety Information* This multilingual document is provided in PDF on the IBM *BladeCenter Documentation* CD and at http://www.ibm.com/systems/ support/. It contains translated versions of the caution and danger statements that appear in the documentation for your blade server. Each caution and danger statement has an assigned number, which you can use to locate the corresponding statement in your native language.
- *Rack Installation Instructions* This document contains the instructions to install your BladeCenter unit in a rack.
- *IBM BladeCenter Hardware Maintenance Manual and Troubleshooting Guide* or *Problem Determination and Service Guide* Depending on your BladeCenter type, one of these documents is provided in PDF on the IBM BladeCenter Documentation CD and at http://www.ibm.com/systems/support/. It contains troubleshooting information for yourself or to provide to a service technician.

Depending on your Blade Server model, additional documents might be included on the IBM BladeCenter Documentation CD, with the most recent versions of all BladeCenter documents available at http://www.ibm.com/systems/bladecenter/.

In addition to reviewing the documentation in this library, make sure that you review the IBM *Planning and Installation Guide* for your BladeCenter unit to help you prepare for system installation and configuration. For more information, see http://www.ibm.com/systems/support/.

#### Other IBM publications

You can download additional IBM publications from the IBM Systems Support Web site at:

#### http://www.ibm.com/systems/support/

The IBM publications center offers customized search functions to help you find the publications that you need. Some publications are available for you to view or download free of charge. You can also order publications. The publications center displays prices in your local currency. You can access the IBM publications center through the following Web site: http://www.ibm.com/e-business/linkweb/publications/servlet/pbi.wss

**Note:** Open the Web site in a new browser window by right clicking on the link and selecting  $\triangle$ Open in New Window. $\triangle$ 

#### Related accessibility information

To view a PDF file, you need Adobe Acrobat Reader, which can be downloaded for free from the Adobe Web site at:

http://www.adobe.com/support/downloads/main.html

## Summary of Changes for IBM BladeCenter S SAS RAID Controller Module Host Systems Attachment Guide

This document contains structural, terminology, maintenance, and editorial changes. Technical changes or additions to the text and illustrations are indicated by a vertical line to the left of the change. This summary of changes describes new, changed, and deleted information for this release.

Version	New Information	Changed Information			
Eleventh Edition (October 2013)	<ul> <li>Add information for SLES 11.3 support</li> <li>Add information for VMware 5.1 update 1 support</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Some commands and instructions in Chapter 4 are updated</li> <li>Multipath verification in a SAS booted host running SLES 11.3</li> <li>Concurrent controller maintenance procedure for Linux host updated</li> </ul>			
Tenth Edition (July 2013)	• Add information for RHEL 5.9 and 6.4 support				
Ninth Edition (March 2013)	<ul> <li>Add information for Windows Server 2012 support</li> <li>Add information for VMware ESX/ ESXi 4.1u3 support</li> </ul>				
Eighth Edition (October 2012)	• Add information about RHEL 6.3 support				
Seventh Edition (August 2012)	Post-OS system installation command for SLES 11.2	<ul> <li>Change the command to build a new initrid image for SUSE Linux Enterprise</li> <li>Multipath verification in a SAS booted host running RHEL 6.2</li> </ul>			

Sixth Edition (June 2012)	<ul> <li>Verifying &amp; Setting LUN Parameters on VMWare Guest Operating Systems running Microsoft Windows</li> <li>In Windows and Linux, for Blades using LSI SAS 2004 HBA (e.g. HS23 and HS23E), add the value settings of "Report Device Missing Delay" and "IO Device Missing Delay" in the Adapter Timing Properties.</li> <li>Add information regarding BladeCenter HS23E support</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>Change Changing Queue depth and Hot plug settings – for RHEL 6.x, 5.x, and SUSE Linux</li> <li>Change RHEL 6.2 command line to build a new Linux initial ram-based root file system (initramfs) image</li> </ul>
Fifth Edition (March 2012)	<ul> <li>Multipath verification in a SAS booted host running RHEL 6.2</li> <li>Add configuring the SAS HBA driver settings for BladeCenter HS23</li> <li>Add information of configuration regarding RHEL 6.2 support</li> <li>Add information regarding BladeCenter HS23 support</li> </ul>	• Change commands and notes for BladeCenter HS23 using inbox mpt2sas driver
Fourth Edition (December 2011)	<ul> <li>Add information regarding queue depth setting for busy response and performance issues in VMWare ESX 4.x</li> <li>Add information regarding RHEL 6.1 and RHEL 5.7 support</li> <li>Add SCSI controller setting as step 0 to ensure the queue depth configuration works properly while running RHEL 6.x as VMWare guest OS</li> <li>Add commands of changing Qdepth setting for VMWare ESXi 5</li> <li>Add Concurrent Maintenance using the AMM in VMWare</li> </ul>	Change information of Post-Operating system installation activities for RHEL 5.7 support

Second Edition	<ul> <li>Add information regarding the PS70x blades</li> <li>Add information regarding SLES11 support</li> <li>Add Appendix C regarding WWN changes when upgrading LSI SAS HBA firmware on specific blade types</li> </ul>	• The IBM support web site has changed. Material reflected in this document was assembled with site information that was available at the time. Some screen shots may look differently then the examples provided in some of the sections
----------------	--	--

## Handling static-sensitive devices

Static electricity can damage electronic devices, including your blade server. To avoid damage, keep static-sensitive devices in their static-protective packages until you are ready to install them.

To reduce the possibility of damage from electrostatic discharge, observe the following precautions:

- When you work on a IBM BladeCenter S chassis that has an electrostatic discharge (ESD) connector, use a wrist strap when you handle modules, optional devices, or blade servers. To work correctly, the wrist strap must have a good contact on both ends. It should touch your skin at one end and firmly connected to the ESD connector on the front or back of the IBM BladeCenter S chassis.
- Limit your movement. Movement can cause static electricity to build up around you.
- Handle the device carefully: holding it by its edges or its frame.
- Do not touch solder joints, pins, or exposed circuitry.
- Do not leave the device where others can handle and damage it.
- While the device is still in its static-protective package, touch it to any **unpainted** metal surface of the IBM BladeCenter S chassis or any **unpainted** metal surface on any other grounded component in the rack you are installing the device in for at least 2 seconds. (This drains static electricity from the package and from your body.)
- Remove the device from its package and install it directly into the blade server without setting down the device. If it is necessary to set down the device, place it back into its static-protective package. Do not place the device on your blade server cover or on a metal surface.
- Take additional care when handling devices during cold weather. Heating reduces indoor humidity and increases static electricity.

## **Chapter 1. Chapter 1 Introduction**

This chapter is an overview of host attachment for the IBM BladeCenter S SAS RAID Controller Module.

The first section contains host attachment requirements and conceptual overviews of key aspects of host attachment, with a focus on Serial Attached SCSI (SAS) attachment. Subsequent sections provide information on the SAS RAID Controller Module interfaces, models and features.

## Introduction to host attachment

Host attachment is the process by which a host system, blade server, is configured to interoperate with external storage devices, the IBM BladeCenter SAS RAID Controller Module.

This section provides overviews of key aspects of host attachment, including requirements for attaching a host blade, overview of the SAS RAID Controller Module storage subsystem, and the IBM System Storage Multipath Subsystem Device Driver (SDD) path considerations. This section also provides conceptual details about SAS attachment.

#### Host attachment overview

The SAS RAID Controller Module provides a variety of host attachments so that you can consolidate storage capacity and workloads for open-systems hosts.

The SAS RAID Controller Module is designed to provide an IBM BladeCenter S chassis with an embedded RAID storage feature solution used as shared storage. The SAS RAID Controller Module is a SAS based consolidated reliable storage platform integrated within the BladeCenter S chassis that is targeted to provide boot and data drive capabilities for the blade servers. It is also provides cost effective shared storage for blade server applications. The SAS RAID Controller Module architecture supports additional capacity via expansion storage enclosures (Disk Storage Modules or DSMs) for environments that have high storage demands. The main SAS RAID Controller Module product value propositions are focused in the areas of overall simplification, end to end system management and BladeCenter eco-system integration. The SAS RAID Controller Module storage platform is highly dependent upon the BladeCenter S chassis DSMs to enable the internal BladeCenter connectivity model.

The SAS RAID Controller Module seamlessly integrates into the IBM BladeCenter S both mechanically and logically with the BladeCenter subsystems: legacy I/O fabric, system management hardware/software, power and cooling. The SAS RAID Controller Module provides RAID storage management control to disk drives contained in the DSMs for the IBM BladeCenter S chassis. It leverages the BladeCenter S internal infrastructure and the SAS fabric in the mid-plane of the BladeCenter S chassis providing SAS host server connectivity via blade server SAS HBA daughter cards.

Each blade server is capable of connectivity via a SAS HBA and the BladeCenter S SAS I/O fabric to each of the SAS RAID Controller Modules. Each blade server is provided a single PHY port SAS connection to each of the SAS Switches in the SAS

RAID Controller Modules. The SAS Switch is connected to the RAID controller side of the SAS RAID Controller Module via a 4 PHY wide SAS port, which when coupled with multi-path I/O software creates a double redundant attachment (multiple paths via the SAS wide ports and host server SAS path to each controller card).

## General requirements for attaching a host

Before you attach a SAS RAID Controller Module to a host, review this list of general requirements for all hosts. Then, review the specific host requirements described in the section for each host.

Perform the following steps before you attach any host system to a SAS RAID Controller Module:

- 1. Review the *SAS RAID Module Interoperability Guide* to verify that the blades you will be configuring are supported with the SAS RAID Controller Module. This should include both hardware and software compatibility.
- 2. Review and understand the type of SAS HBA that will be used on the host blades which will be connected to the SAS RAID Controller Module. Various blades use different SAS HBAs.
- 3. *Review ServerProven compatibility* http://www.ibm.com/servers/eserver/ serverproven/compat/us/
- 4. Review the SAS RAID Controller Module Installation & User Guide
- 5. If using the SAS RAID Controller Module with Microsoft Cluster Server (MSCS), make sure to review the section regarding host setup.
- 6. If SAS Booting a host, make sure to review the OS specific section regarding SAS Booting before attempting to setup SAS Boot from the SAS RAID Controller Module

Be sure to review all the compatibility guides. The most restrictive set is the one which should be relied upon. For instance if VMware 3 ESXi is supported on the HS21 blade in ServerProven, but it is not supported in the SAS RAID Controller Module Interoperability Guide, it should not be attempted to install VMWare 3 ESXi if that server will be connected to the SAS RAID Controller Module.

## Introduction to IBM BladeCenter S SAS RAID Controller Module

This guide contains instructions for attaching host system blades with SAS expansion or connectivity cards to the IBM BladeCenter S SAS RAID Controller Modules.

The IBM BladeCenter S SAS RAID Controller Module provides a fully-integrated shared storage solution in an IBM BladeCenter S chassis. This guide contains instructions for attaching host system blades with SAS expansion or connectivity cards to the IBM BladeCenter S SAS RAID Controller Modules.

For additional information regarding the installation and configuration of the SAS RAID Controller Module refer to the *IBM BladeCenter S SAS RAID Controller Module Installation and Users Guide*.

#### Data storage subsystems

Two subsystems are involved in IBM BladeCenter S data storage: the Disk Storage Module (DSM), and the SAS RAID Module. The Disk Storage Module (DSM) is an

enclosure holding up to six Disk Drive Modules (DDMs). There are a maximum of two DSMs installed in an IBM BladeCenter S chassis.

#### SAS RAID Module subsystems

The SAS RAID Module includes two subsystems: a RAID Controller subsystem and a SAS Switch subsystem. These subsystem cooperate to provide a connection between the Blade servers and the DSMs that allow the end user to design storage configurations and volumes for their data.

The Battery Backup Unit (BBU) is installed in the Media Tray in the front of the BladeCenter S Chassis. The BBUs provide protection of the cache memory in the SAS RAID Controller Modules.

In addition, a SAS HBA must be installed in each blade server for the blades to connect to the RAID Data Storage subsystem and modules. The figure below shows the physical layout of the IBM BladeCenter S chassis.



Figure 1. Diagram of IBM BladeCenter S Chassis

## IBM BladeCenter S SAS RAID Controller Module Interfaces

This section describes the interfaces that can be used to manage the IBM BladeCenter S SAS RAID Controller Module

These interfaces include:

- IBM Storage Configuration Manager
- IBM Systems Director
- SAS RAID Controller Module Command-Line Interface (CLI)
- SAS RAID Controller Command Line Firmware Update Package

## **IBM Storage Configuration Manager**

IBM Storage Configuration Manager is a system management application that enables you to use a Web browser to manage and configure IBM BladeCenter devices.

IBM Storage Configuration Manager runs as a Web server that communicates with managed devices. Managed devices include the following:

- IBM BladeCenter SAS Connectivity Module
- IBM BladeCenter S Disk Storage Module
- IBM BladeCenter S SAS RAID Controller Module

**Note:** As of IBM Storage Configuration Manager 2.20.0, IBM ServeRAID MR Controllers and IBM Integrated RAID Controllers are no longer supported devices in IBM Storage Configuration Manager. You can continue to manage these devices using the Storage Management feature in IBM Systems Director.

**Important:** IBM Storage Configuration Manager and IBM Systems Director cannot be installed on the same server.

For additional information on the installation and use of the IBM Storage Configuration Manager, go to:

http://www.ibm.com/systems/support/supportsite.wss/ docdisplay?lndocid=MIGR-5081393&brandind=5000016

## **IBM Systems Director**

IBM Systems Director is a platform-management foundation that streamlines the way you manage physical and virtual systems across a heterogeneous environment. By using industry standards, IBM Systems Director supports multiple operating systems and virtualization technologies across IBM and non-IBM x86 platforms.

Through a single user interface, IBM Systems Director provides consistent views for viewing managed systems, determining how these systems relate to one another, and identifying the status of each system, thus helping to correlate technical resources with business needs. A set of common tasks included with IBM Systems Director provides many of the core capabilities required for basic management, which means instant out-of-the-box business value. These common tasks include discovery, inventory, configuration, system health, monitoring, updates, event notification and automation across managed systems.

IBM Systems Director's Web and command-line interfaces provide a consistent interface focused on driving these common tasks and capabilities:

- Discovering, navigating and visualizing systems on the network with the detailed inventory and relationships to the other network resources
- Notifying users of problems that occur and providing the ability to drill down to the source of the problem
- Notifying users when systems need updates and distributing and installing updates on a schedule
- Analyzing real-time data for systems and setting critical thresholds that notify the administrator of emerging problems
- Configuring settings of a single system and creating a configuration plan that can apply those settings to multiple systems

- Updating installed plug-ins to add new features and function to the base capabilities
- · Managing the lifecycle of virtual resources

IBM Systems Director is designed to manage simple and complex environments, with multiple operating systems and platforms, up to 5000 managed systems. It supports the management of a variety of IBM and non-IBM hardware driving common tasks through the following platform management plug-ins and virtual resources. The systems supported include:

- IBM Power Systems<sup>™</sup> management
  - HMC, IVM, and VIOS appliances
  - Power servers, Power blades, and LS41 and QS21 blade servers
  - AIX, IBM i, and Linux on POWER operating systems
- IBM BladeCenter and System x management
  - IBM BladeCenter chassis components, such as switch modules and server blades
  - System x systems and blade servers
  - VMware, Microsoft Virtual Server (MSVS), and Xen virtual servers
  - Windows and Linux operating systems on System x
- IBM System z management
  - z/VM hypervisor
  - Linux on System z operating system installed on z/VM virtual servers
  - Linux on System z running on a partition without z/VM
- IBM System Storage<sup>™</sup> management
  - Integrated RIA controller (such as LSI)
  - Network storage, such as DS3000, DS4000, and DS6000<sup>™</sup>
  - Storage switches, such as IBM BladeCenter SAS, Brocade, Qlogic, Nortel and Cisco

## SAS RAID Controller Module Command Line Interface (CLI)

The SAS RAID Controller Module command line interface (CLI) is an independent program that can be used to operate the RAID controller.

You must log in to the SAS RAID Controller Module via either telnet or SSH using your user ID and password. The SAS RAID Controller Module command line interface program starts automatically, and a <CLI> prompt appears. When you exit from the SAS RAID Controller Module command line interface program, the telnet/ssh session ends simultaneously.

For additional information regarding the use of the CLI interface, refer to the *IBM BladeCenter S SAS RAID Controller Module Installation and Users Guide*.

http://www.ibm.com/support/entry/portal/docdisplay?lndocid=MIGR-5078491

# SAS RAID Controller Command Line Firmware Update Package

The SAS RAID Controller Firmware Update Package is a CLI based application package that you can use to update the IBM BladeCenter S SAS RAID Controller Module, Disk Storage Module (DSM), battery firmware and Disk Drive Module (DDM) firmware. You may also write scripts automating firmware updates of single or multiple IBM BladeCenter S units.

For additional information regarding the installation and use of this package refer to the *IBM BladeCenter S SAS RAID Controller Module Installation and Users Guide* and the release notes included with each firmware update.

## **RAID** implementation

A RAID implementation improves data storage reliability and performance.

Redundant Array of Independent Disks (RAID) is a method of configuring multiple disk drives in a storage subsystem for high availability and high performance. The collection of two or more physical disk drives presents the image of a single logical disk drive to the host system. In the event of a single device failure, data can be read or regenerated from the other disk drives in the array.

A RAID implementation enables fault-tolerant data storage by storing the data in different places on multiple disk drive modules (DDMs). By placing data on multiple disks, I/O operations can overlap in a balanced way to improve the basic reliability and performance of the attached storage devices.

When using the SAS RAID Controller Module, physical capacity can be configured as RAID 5, RAID 10, RAID 1, or RAID 0.

**Note**: RAID 0 is not redundant; however it is used to improve the basic performance of the attached storage devices.

Different RAID implementations may be used during the configuration of the storage pools depending upon the needs of the application. The following is a general overview of each storage pool type. For further information regarding how to configure a storage pool, refer to the *IBM BladeCenter S SAS RAID Controller Module Installation and Users Guide*.

http://www.ibm.com/support/entry/portal/docdisplay?lndocid=MIGR-5078491

**Note:** Even though there is a minimum defined in the following section for each RAID type, it is recommended when possible to use additional disk drive modules in pool configurations to improve response time.

## **RAID 5 Overview**

RAID 5 is a method of spreading volume data across multiple disk drives. The IBM BladeCenter S SAS RAID Controller Module supports RAID 5 storage pools at a minimum of three (3) drives and to a maximum of twelve (12) drives in a single storage pool.

RAID 5 increases performance by supporting concurrent accesses to the multiple DDMs within each logical volume. Data protection is provided by parity, which is stored throughout the drives in the storage pool. If a drive fails, the data on that drive can be restored using all the other drives in the storage pool along with the parity bits that were created when the data was stored.

Also, if bad blocks develop on a drive, the redundancy of the storage pool can be used to restore the bad block data to a reserved area on the storage pool.

#### Uses

Provides high data throughput, especially for large files. Use RAID 5 for transaction processing applications because each drive can read and write independently. If a drive fails, the RAID controller uses the parity drive to recreate all missing information. Use also for office automation and online customer service that requires fault tolerance. Use for any application that has high read request rates but low write request rates.

#### **Strong Points**

Provides data redundancy, high read rates, and good performance in most environments. Provides redundancy with lowest loss of capacity.

#### Weak Points

Not well-suited to tasks requiring lot of writes. Suffers more impact if no cache is used (clustering). Drive performance will be reduced if a drive is being rebuilt. Environments with few processes do not perform as well because the RAID overhead is not offset by the performance gains in handling simultaneous processes.

#### **RAID 1 Overview**

RAID 1 provides high availability by providing disk mirroring, which duplicates data between two disk drives. The IBM BladCenter S SAS RAID Controller Module supports RAID 1 storage pools at a minimum and maximum of two (2) drives per storage pool.

RAID 1 implementation provides data mirroring from one DDM to another DDM. Access to data is preserved as long as one disk in the mirrored pair remains available. In some cases, RAID 1 offers faster data read operations due to the fact that either of the disk drives in the pair can be used for the read operation. The total number of writes are doubled as every write must be performed to both drives. Since it consumes two drives to provide the same capacity as a single drive, RAID 1 storage pools may have less total capacity available than other RAID types.

Uses

Use RAID 1 for small databases or any other environment that requires fault tolerance but small capacity.

#### **Strong Points**

Provides complete data redundancy. RAID 1 is ideal for any application that requires fault tolerance and minimal capacity.

#### Weak Points

Requires twice as many drives. Performance is impaired during drive rebuilds.

## **RAID 0 Overview**

RAID 0 is a method of spreading volume data across multiple disk drives. The IBM BladeCenter S SAS RAID Controller Module supports RAID 0 storage pools at a minimum of two (2) drives and to a maximum of twelve (12) drives in a single storage pool.

A RAID 0 implementation provides no data redundancy; however, due to striping volume data across multiple physical disk drives, data access performance for some work loads may be improved over other RAID types. Since none of the disk drive capacity is used for redundancy, RAID 0 storage pools allow for the highest amount of usable space for user data than other RAID types. However, if a single drive is lost, then all access to the storage pool will be lost. It is strongly recommended that the risks are understood before implementing a configuration using this type of storage pool.

Uses

Provides high data throughput, especially for large files. Any environment that does not require fault tolerance.

#### **Strong Points**

Provides increased data throughput for large files. No capacity loss penalty for parity.

#### Weak Points

Does not provide fault tolerance or high bandwidth. All data lost if any drive fails.

## **RAID 10 overview**

RAID 10 provides higher availability by combining features of RAID 0 and RAID 1. The IBM BladeCenter S SAS RAID Controller Module supports RAID 10 storage pools at a minimum of four (4) drives and up to a maximum of twelve (12) drives in a single storage pool.

A RAID 10 implementation provides data mirroring from one DDM to another DDM. RAID 10 stripes data across half of the disk drives in the RAID 10 configuration. The other half of the array mirrors the first set of disk drives. Access to data is preserved as long as one disk in each mirrored pair remains available. In some cases, RAID 10 offers faster data read and write operations than RAID 5 because it does not need to manage parity. However, with half of the DDMs in the group used for data and the other half used to mirror that data, RAID 10 disk groups have less capacity than RAID 5 disk groups using the same number and capacity of disk drives.

#### Uses

Appropriate when used with data storage that needs 100 percent redundancy of mirrored drive groups and that also needs the enhanced I/O performance of RAID 0 (striped drive groups.) RAID 10 works well for medium-sized databases or any environment that requires a higher degree of fault tolerance and moderate to medium capacity.

#### **Strong Points**

Provides both high data transfer rates and complete data redundancy.

#### Weak Points

Requires twice as many drives as all other RAID levels except RAID 1.

## **Disk Drive Types**

This section provides an overview of the two major types of Disk Drive Modules (DDMs) supported in the IBM BladeCenter S SAS RAID Controller Module. These drive types are Online SAS disk drives and Nearline SAS Disk drives.

**Note:** Disk drive modules using the SATA drive connection technology are not supported by the IBM BladeCenter S SAS RAID Controller Module.

For the complete list of supported drives, please refer to the *IBM BladeCenter S SAS RAID Module Interoperability Guide*.

## **Online SAS Disk Drive Modules**

Online SAS Disk Drive Modules are disk drives that use the SAS drive connection technology to connect to the IBM BladeCenter S SAS RAID Controller Module.

These drives tend to have smaller capacity than Nearline SAS DDMs, however their rotational speeds are faster. This causes the access times for these drives often to be shorter than Nearline SAS DDMs. When storage pools are configured with these drive types, overall system performance may be higher than the performance observed when using Nearline SAS DDMs.

## Nearline SAS Disk Drive Modules

Nearline SAS Disk Drive Modules are disk drives that use the SAS drive connection technology to connect to the IBM BladeCenter S SAS RAID Controller Module.

These drives tend to have higher capacity limits than Online SAS DDMs, however their rotational speeds are slower. This causes the access times for these drives often to be longer than for Online SAS DDMs. When storage pools are configured with these drive types, overall system performance may be less than the performance observed when using Online SAS DDMs. Users should consider the needs of their specific application before considering the use of these DDM types in their storage pool configurations.

## Mixed Storage Pools

It is not recommended to mix Nearline SAS DDMs and Online SAS DDMs in the same storage pool. The overall storage pool performance may be reduced to the performance seen when Nearline SAS DDMs are used exclusively in a storage pool.

Using separate pools consisting of different drive types may be appropriate for some types of applications. Therefore having mixed types of drives in a single Disk Storage Module in the BladeCenter S Chassis is supported by the IBM BladeCenter S SAS RAID Controller Module with no performance penalty.

## Logical configuration overview

The IBM BladeCenter S SAS RAID Controller Module allows for the configuration of multiple physical disk drive modules into one or more logical storage pools.

These storage pools can then be divided into multiple logical volumes that can be mapped to the host. This is a method of virtualization that allows the physical drives to be shared among more than one host. The illustration in the following figure provides an example of how the physical resources are combined and allocated to host systems.




## IBM System Storage Multipath Subsystem Device Driver

The IBM System Storage Multipath Subsystem Device Driver (SDD) supports redundant connections between a disk storage server and a host server.

The SDD resides in the host server with the native disk device driver and takes advantage of redundant storage configurations to provide single-point failure protection, high data availability, and storage concurrent firmware download. It also provides a dynamic I/O load-balancing algorithm to reach the best I/O performance.

The SDD provides the following functions:

- Enhanced data availability
- Automatic path failover and failback
- Dynamic I/O load-balancing across multiple paths
- Multiple path selection policies for the host system
- Multiple path SAN boot on storage devices that support multipath I/O (MPIO)

**Note:** SAN boot is supported on the AIX, Windows, VMware, and Linux operating systems.

The term *SDD* represents both the SDD as the established multipath subsystem device driver and as the MPIO path control module, depending upon the operating system. The following table lists the multipath control modules for each of the listed operating systems.

Table 2. Example of multipath control modules

Operating System	Description	Acronymn	
AIX	SDD Path Control Module	SDDPCM	

Table 2.	Example	of n	nultipath	control	modules	(continued)	
----------	---------	------	-----------	---------	---------	-------------	--

AIX	Native MPIO	Default PCM
Linux	Device Mapper-Multipath I/O	DM-MPIO
Windows	SDD Device Specific Module	SDDDSM
VMware	Native Multipath	NMP

As new operating systems are added, the SDD will be named according to the operating system.

For more information about the SDD, see:

http://www.ibm.com/systems/support/storage/software/sdd.

## Host attachment path considerations

The list of path considerations of the host attachment

Path considerations affect the performance and availability of a storage image. For optimal performance, observe the following suggestions:

- Create pools that are owned by each controller
- Use additional physical disks per pool where possible
- · Use spares when possible to increase protection against drive failures
- Determine the best RAID type for your application and requirements for redundancy and performance.
- · Separate boot and data volumes into distinct pools when possible
- Limit the number of assigned LUNs
- Adopt appropriate queue depth settings
- · In VMware make sure the Multipath setting is configured as shown below

## Serial Attached SCSI host attachment

This section provides an overview of SAS attachment to an IBM BladeCenter S SAS RAID Controller Module, including architecture, topology, and LUN access modes.

### SAS architecture

A SAS topology typically consists of initiators, targets and expanders. A SAS initiator is a device that originates command and data requests for target devices and receives responses for those requests from the same target devices. SAS target devices usually are controller devices that provide interfaces for management or provide logical units that receive command and data frames from SAS initiators and respond in kind to the requests. A SAS expander provides expansion from the point topology between initiator and target devices. An expander can be added in between an initiator and a target. This allows multiple initiators and targets to communicate with one another.

Each attempt to communicate requires the opening of a logical connection between the initiator and target, followed by an exchange of commands and possibly data, and a closing of the connection. When expanders are used, the topology of SAS is analogous to a hub architecture. Because of this, anything that affects a single target, such as a link or bus reset, will affect all initiators and targets in the topology.

#### SAS overview for the SAS RAID Controller Module

Each SAS RAID Controller Module has four ports, also known as PHYs, all using a single worldwide port name (WWN); this is known as a wide SAS port.

In the SAS fabric created by the SAS RAID Controller Module configuration, a PHY on each SAS host bus adapter (HBA) has physical access to the same SAS wide port on one of the SAS RAID Controller Modules. Internal zoning configuration is used to provide a logical configuration path between the SAS HBA on the blade host and the SAS RAID Controller Module. This is the default for the configuration. If your setup requires changes to these defaults, it is recommended to contact IBM for assistance.

#### LUN considerations for SAS attachment

Worldwide names are used to associate a Logical Unit (LUN) for SAS attachment. For SAS attachment, LUNs are associated with the SAS adapter through the worldwide name (WWN) for the host adapter. Each SAS HBA has two PHYs available for connecting external to the host blade. Each PHY is associated with one of the SAS RAID Controller Modules.

**Note**: By default the SAS RAID Controller Module is setup to allow the host blades adapter to access the SAS wide port on the SAS RAID Controller Module and the four external wide SAS ports.

The maximum number of LUNs that can be assigned to a host is dependent on the host operating system type. The following table lists the maximum number of LUNs that are supported by the listed host.

Host operating system type	Max # of LUNs per host				
AIX	16				
Linux	16				
Windows	16				
VMware	16				

Table 3. Maximum Supported LUNs per host operating system

The maximum queue depth that can be supported by a host is dependent on the host operating system type. The following table lists the maximum number of outstanding commands regardless of the number of LUNs that are supported by the listed host.

Table 4. Maximum Supported Queue per host operating system

Host operating system type	Max queue per host				
AIX	64				
Linux	64				
Windows	64				
VMware	64				

The queue depth setting for the SAS RAID Controller Module should be set on the host blade server so that the combined total number of IO operations outstanding to the SAS RAID Controller Module cannot exceed the max queue per host defined in Maximum Supported Queue per host operating system table. This means that for each host, the queue depth should be calculated based on the number mapped LUNs to the host.

For example, to calculate the host queue depth per LUN if there are 12 LUNs mapped to a host and the maximum supported queue for that host is 64, divide 64 by 12, which equals 5, rounded down. The queue depth for the host should then be set to 5. For detailed information regarding how to set the host queue depth for a given operating system, refer to configuring of a SAS HBA driver in the following host specific chapters.

**Note:** For VMware, the queue depth setting is HBA, not LUN based, which differs from the other supported operating systems. Please refer toChapter 4, "Chapter 4 x86-64 (Intel or AMD) blades running VMware Host Attachment," on page 85, for additional information.

**Important:** In some configurations, the calculated queue depth may need further adjustment to achieve the optimal performance and fault tolerance characteristics. If issues are seen such as low throughput or a high number of BUSY responses returned from the SAS RAID Controller Module, additional tuning may be required.

## **Host Mapping**

A host mapping defined on the SAS RAID Controller Module can access only those volumes that are defined in that mapping.

Any SAS host blade that has a host mapping defined on the SAS RAID Controller Module can access only those volumes that are defined in that mapping. A host mapping can contain up to a maximum of 16 volumes. The setup of a host mapping can be accomplished through the Command Line Interface (CLI) on the SAS RAID Controller Module or by using the IBM Storage Configuration Manager. An alert will be shown in the active alert list for all host blade WWNs that do not currently have a host mapping defined. It may not be apparent that a host mapping is being defined when using the IBM Storage Configuration Manager to configure the hosts and volumes for the SAS RAID Controller Module.

The following configuration actions can affect host mapping:

- When you define a new SAS host system in the IBM Storage Configuration Manager by specifying its worldwide name (WWN), the host mapping for that host system is automatically created. Initially the profile is empty. That is, it contains no volumes. In this state, the host cannot access any logical volumes including those that are already defined in the SAS RAID Controller Module. This action will remove the active alert in the system associated with the undefined WWN.
- When you add new logical volumes to a SAS host defined to the SAS RAID Controller Module, the new volumes are assigned to the host. The new volumes are created and are automatically added to the host mapping.
- When you assign existing volumes to SAS hosts, the volumes are added to the host mapping for that host.
- A SAS host cannot access any volumes until volumes are assigned to the host's WWN.

- To allow for multipathing, the logical volume must be assigned to both WWNs of the SAS host blade.
- When you remove a SAS host system using the IBM Storage Configuration Manager or the CLI, you delete the host and its host mapping.
- When you remove all volumes from a host mapping, the host mapping will remain with no volumes mapped to the host.
- If you replace a SAS controller card or if you are using a SAS connectivity card and the system board is replaced, you will have to redo the mapping for the blade to gain access to the volume again.

#### SAS worldwide name identification

The IBM BladeCenter S SAS RAID Controller Module uses a worldwide name (WWN) to uniquely identify a host port that is connected to a storage unit. The WWN consists of exactly 16 hexadecimal characters (0 - 9 and A - F). Each WWN is an 8 byte number derived from an IEEE OUI and vendor-supplied information.

The unique worldwide name can manually locate for host ports by performing the steps outlined in the chapter specific for each host later in this guide. To identify the WWN for the SAS RAID Controller Module, please refer to the *IBM BladeCenter S SAS RAID Controller Module Installation and Users Guide*.

## Prerequisites

The following sections discuss some of the operations that should be performed prior to attempting to connect a host blade to the IBM BladeCenter S SAS RAID Controller Module.

## About this task

### Procedure

- Make sure that the BladeCenter S chassis, blade servers, SAS RAID Controller Modules, Ethernet switch modules, SAS expansion/connectivity cards and SAS drives are supported in combination with one another. The *IBM BladeCenter Interoperability Guide* provides a matrix showing all of the devices that have been tested with the IBM BladeCenter chassis and are known to be compatible. The *Interoperability Guide* is updated frequently. The guide is posted at http://www.ibm.com/systems/support/,
  - On the 'Support for IBM Systems ' page, select 'BladeCenter'.
  - On the 'Support and Downloads' page, select 'BladeCenter S Chassis' and "Documentation', then 'View your page',
  - On the resulting page, select 'Interoperability Guide IBM BladeCenter'.
- 2. Make sure that the AMM, blade server, Ethernet switch module, SAS expansion/connectivity card and SAS drive BIOS and firmware levels are supported in combination with the IBM BladeCenter S SAS RAID Controller Modules. The *IBM BladeCenter S SAS RAID Module Interoperability Matrix* provides a guide showing all of the devices that have been tested with the IBM BladeCenter S SAS RAID Controller Module and are known to be compatible. The SAS RAID Module Interoperability Matrix is updated periodically. The guide is posted at http://www.ibm.com/systems/support/.
  - On the 'Support for IBM Systems' page, select 'BladeCenter'.
  - On the 'Support and Downloads' page, select 'Search for a product', and search for '43W3584'

- Check the box for 'IBM BladeCenter S SAS RAID Controller Module', then choose 'Documentation' and 'View your page'
- On the resulting page, select 'SAS RAID Module Interoperability Guide'
- 3. For the latest Advanced Management Module firmware, SAS RAID Controller Module firmware, Ethernet switch firmware, SAS expansion/connectivity card firmware, blade server BIOS/BMC/Diagnostic/On board SAS controller BIOS/Firmware code, and device drivers, go to http://www.ibm.com/ systems/support/, select BladeCenter S (BC-S) chassis or the appropriate blade server Machine Type and model and click on the download hyper link and see the software and device driver web page.
- 4. Make sure that an Advanced Management Module is installed in the BladeCenter chassis.
- 5. Make sure that an IBM BladeCenter Ethernet switch module or an IBM BladeCenter intelligent Copper Pass-through Module (iCPM) is installed in bay 1 of the BC-S chassis. Without the appropriate Ethernet switch module or iCPM in bay 1 of the BC-S chassis, the management connection to the SAS RAID Controller Modules for checking the status and configuring of the modules will not be possible. In addition, the modules might not be in the "optimal and bound" state. Also, verify that VLAN 4095 is set up and configured on the AMM and the SAS RAID Controller Modules.

**Note:** The IBM BladeCenter intelligent Copper Pass-through Module (iCPM), IBM option P/N 44W4483, is compatible with the SAS RAID Controller Module only if a standard Ethernet cable is used to connect ports 7 and 14 of the iCPM module. Furthermore, the IBM BladeCenter Copper Pass-through Module (CPM), IBM option P/N 73P6100, is not compatible with the SAS RAID Controller Module and should not be used in bay 1 of the BC-S chassis with SAS RAID Controller Modules installed.

- 6. If there are no blade servers in the BC-S chassis with an operating system installed, an external workstation is required for the initial setup of the BladeCenter chassis and the SAS RAID Controller Modules.
- 7. Review the *Installation and User's Guide* publications that were shipped with your BladeCenter S chassis, SAS RAID Controller Modules, blade servers, Ethernet switches and SAS expansion/connectivity card options.
- 8. Review the publications and release notes that were shipped with the IBM Storage Configuration Manager (SCM) software if SCM is going to be used to configure the SAS RAID Controller Modules.
- **9**. Review the release notes that were included with the SAS RAID Controller Module firmware and any other firmware and device driver packages that will be used in the following procedures.

# Considerations When Using a SAS Expansion Card on a System X or System P Host Blade

This section describes how to install an SAS Expansion Card on an LS (AMD), HS (Intel) or PS / JS (Power) host blade.

#### CAUTION:

Observe all ESD precautions and procedures while following these steps otherwise damage to the blade and or card may result.

**Note:** Only some host blades support the SAS Expansion adapter. For the most current support information, consult the *Blade Center Interoperability Guide*.

**Tip:** The SAS WWN is a 16 digit hexadecimal number printed on the SAS card (it is not available on SAS connectivity card, as the connectivity card uses the system board SAS controller). It is recommended that you record this number before installing the card as it will be used later when mapping LUNs to the host.

**Note:** Some hosts have an internal SAS Adapter. This will affect the installation of the Windows operating system if you intend to SAS Boot the host or use the internal adapter to run both the SAS RAID Controller Module and internal storage. Refer to the *Installation and Users Guide* for the host blade to determine if blade has an internal SAS adapter.

It is common to install the operating system on the logical drive. Then define volumes from the SAS RAID Module to this same blade. Then the blade does not reboot. If you encounter this issue, review the boot order in your SAS controller configuration.

If the host blade has an internal SAS adapter, it is necessary that the SAS expansion card driver be installed as an additional driver during the OS installation to ensure that the host can access the storage properly.

If the host has come preconfigured with both the internal and expansion card drivers updated then proceed with the OS installation and expansion card updates.

**Note:** The Bootable Media Creator tool can assist you updating firmware on a blade prior to installing an operating system. UpdateXpress Systems pack Installer can help you install or update drivers and firmwares once the operating system is installed. These tools can be found on the IBM Toolscenter web site:

the ServerProven compatibility

# Considerations When Using a SAS Connectivity Card on an x86-64 blade or a PS / JS (System P) Host Blade

This section describes how to install an SAS Connectivity Card on an System X or System P host blade.

#### CAUTION:

Observe all ESD precautions and procedures while following these steps otherwise damage to the blade and or card may result.

**Note:** Only some of the Intel or AMD host blades running Linux support the SAS Connectivity Card. For the most current support information, consult the *Blade Center Interoperability Guide*.

Hosts using the SAS Connectivity Card utilize the internal SAS controller built into the motherboard of the host blade. The SAS Connectivity Card allows this internal HBA adapter to connect to the BladeCenter-S chassis SAS fabric.

**Note:** For hosts that use the SAS Connectivity Card, the internal hard drive and externally mapped drives are on the same storage bus. To configure the blade to boot correctly from the internal hard drive with the SAS Connectivity Card, the Onboard SAS Controller BIOS must be set to scan LUN0 only during the boot process and any external drives mapped to the host from the SAS RAID Controller Module must be mapped with LUN numbers greater than 0.

# Chapter 2. Chapter 2 x86-64 (Intel or AMD) blades Running Linux Host Attachment

This section describes how to attach an Intel or Advanced Micro Devices (AMD) host blade running the Linux operating system to a SAS RAID Controller Module using SAS adapters.

This chapter contains the following sections:

- "Updating the Driver for SAS HBAs on x86-64 (Intel or AMD) Host Running Linux" on page 20
- "Updating the Firmware and BIOS on a SAS Expansion Card on x86-64 (Intel or AMD) Host Running Linux" on page 23
- For configuration of the SAS HBA BIOS, refer to Appendix A, "Appendix A: Configuring a SAS HBA BIOS on x86-64 (Intel or AMD) host," on page 147
- "Configuring SAS Driver Settings on x86-64 (Intel or AMD) Host Running Linux" on page 24
- "Configuring Host System Settings on x86-64 (Intel or AMD) Host Running Linux" on page 26
- "Configuring the Device Mapper Multipathing Configuration File on x86-64 (Intel or AMD) Host Running Linux" on page 28
- "Configuration for Remote SAS Booting on x86-64 (Intel or AMD) Host Running Linux" on page 31

Before you attach a host, review the following information:

- For an overview of host attachment requirements, see "General requirements for attaching a host" on page 2 on page "General requirements for attaching a host" on page 2.
- For the most current information on supported hosts, operating systems, adapters, and switches, review the *IBM BladeCenter S SAS RAID Controller Module Interoperability Matrix*.

For additional SDD information, see the *IBM System Storage Multipath Subsystem Device Driver User's Guide* at

http://www.ibm.com/systems/support/storage/software/sdd

#### Notes:

• Host systems running the Linux operating system natively connected to the SAS RAID Controller Module support both single path and multipath connectivity.

**Note**: If this Linux installation is being set up on one of the supported virtualization environments, please refer to the section regarding the specific virtualization environment for host attachment details.

• Multipath connectivity is supported with the native Linux Device Mapper-Multipath I/O (DM-MPIO). For the most current list of supported OS levels and driver requirements, see the *IBM BladeCenter S SAS RAID Controller Module Interoperability Matrix*.

For additional information, go to the IBM System Storage Web site at

http://www.ibm.com/support/fixcentral/

Find and click the "here" link below the table.

- The steps in this section that are used to install and configure adapter cards are only examples. Your configuration might be different.
- Many Linux distributions enable administrators to configure their systems for automatic system updates. Administrators can configure these features to query for, and automatically install, all available, updates which can include updates to the kernel.

**Tip:** Consider turning off the automatic update feature. Some drivers that are supplied by IBM, such as HBA drivers, are dependent on a specific kernel and cannot function in the presence of a new kernel. HBA drivers must be compiled against specific kernels for optimal performance. By allowing automatic update of the kernel, you risk an unexpected impact to your host system.

# Updating the Driver for SAS HBAs on x86-64 (Intel or AMD) Host Running Linux

This section describes how to update a SAS Expansion Card adapter driver on x86-64 (Intel or AMD) host blade that is running the Linux operating system. The following driver versions listed are only examples, the current firmware may be at a later version than shown in the following steps.

### Procedure

- Download the firmware file from the following URL onto your Linux server: http://www.ibm.com/systems/support/supportsite.wss/ brandmain?brandind=5000020
  - Select Product Family, then select 'Go'
  - For Example: Product Family: BladeCenter LS22

Select your product	
Fields marked with an asterisk (*) are required.	
Product family: *	
Select a product family	~
Type:	
All	~
Model:	
All	. M.
Operating system:	
All listed operating systems	÷
Note: Not all operating systems listed are supp platforms. Check <u>ServerProven</u> for compatibility	orted on all hardware

Figure 3. Example of Product Family Search

Select the SAS Expansion card firmware update listed. tar -xzf ibm\_dd\_mptsas\_4.16.80.01\_rhel5\_32-64.tgz

- Unpack the .tar file with the following command: tar -xzf ibm\_dd\_mptsas\_4.16.80.01\_rhel5\_32-64.tgz
- Issue the following command to install the new package. ./install.sh --update --override

```
[root@zuni newcode]# tar xzf ibm_dd_mptsas_4.16.80.01_rhel5_32-64.tgz
[root@zuni newcode]# ls -l
total 4784
drwxrwxr-x 2 root root 4096 Feb 10 16:49 apps
-rw-r--r-- 1 root root 4802696 Feb 12 2009 1bm dd mptsas 4.16.80.01 rhel5 32-64.tgz
-rwxrwxr-x 1 501 501 2103 Jul 24 2007 install.sh
-rwxrwxr-x 1 501 501 19228 Jul 24 2007 LICENSE.fixid
-rwxrwxr-x 1 501 501 5463 Mar 6 2008 README.fixid
drwxrwxr-x 3 root root 4096 Feb 10 16:49 rhel5
drwxrwxr-x 2 root root 4096 Feb 10 16:53 SRPM
drwxrwxr-x 2 501 501
                       4096 Feb 10 16:36 tools
[root@zuni newcode]# ./install.sh --update --override --add-initrd
       Drivers will be installed/migrated to 2.6.18-53 version
Checking kmod-lsi-mptlinux-4.16.80.01-1.x86_64.rpm
.....
              kmod-lsi-mptlinux-4.16.80.01-1.x86_64.rpm installed successfully
SUCCESS
[root@zun1 newcode]#
```

Figure 4. Example of Linux driver update

**Note:** The example shows an additional option to update the initrd image. If this is run, then the following step may be skipped.

4. The Linux initial RAM disk (initrd) image, may need to be rebuilt to update the newly installed driver in the image. To rebuild the image, consult the steps specific for the installed version of the Linux operating system.

**Important:** If the driver has been updated on a host that is SAS booted and the host has already been configured for multi-pathing, please refer to "Configuration for Remote SAS Booting on x86-64 (Intel or AMD) Host Running Linux" on page 31, for host specific steps on updating the initrd image. If the host is not SAS booted, or is initially being setup for SAS booting and is still running in a single path configuration, then continue with the following steps.

a. Back up the initial RAM disk (initrd) image by performing the following commands in the Linux shell.

```
cd /boot
```

```
mv initrd-`uname -r`.img initrd-`uname -r`.img.backup
```

b. To build the new initrd image:

Red Hat Enterprise Linux: mkinitrd -v /boot/initrd-`uname -r`.img `uname -r` SuSE Linux Enterprise Server: mkinitrd

- 5. Reboot the blade.
- 6. After the blade comes back up, run the following commands to verify that the driver is loaded and that it is being used during boot:
  - dmesg | grep -i fusion
  - cat /proc/mpt/version

The output should be similar to the following figure.

```
[root@zuni ~]# dmesg | grep -i fusion
Fusion MPT base driver 4.16.80.01
Fusion MPT SAS Host driver 4.16.80.01
Fusion MPT SPI Host driver 4.16.80.01
Fusion MPT FC Host driver 4.16.80.01
Fusion MPT misc device (ioctl) driver 4.16.80.01
mptctl: Registered with Fusion MPT base driver
Fusion MPT LAN driver 4.16.80.01
[root@zuni ~]# cat /proc/mpt/version
mptlinux-4.16.80.01
  Fusion MPT base driver
  Fusion MPT SAS host driver
  Fusion MPT SPI host driver
  Fusion MPT FC host driver
  Fusion MPT ioctl driver
  Fusion MPT LAN driver
[root@zuni ~]#
```

Figure 5. Example of Linux output after driver update

# Updating the Firmware and BIOS on a SAS Expansion Card on x86-64 (Intel or AMD) Host Running Linux

This section describes how to update a SAS Expansion Card adapter's firmware and BIOS on x86-64 (Intel or AMD) host blade that is running the Linux operating system. The following firmware versions listed are only examples, the current firmware may be at a later version than shown.

## About this task

**Note:** The firmware versions listed are only examples, the current firmware may be at a later version than shown. The package may be different from the actual version shown as seen in the following figure.

SLOT	ID	LUN	VENDOR	PRODUCT	REVISION	INT13 SIZ	ΕN	NU	
0	0	8	IBM-ESXS	ST973402SS	B522	Boot	68	GB	
8			LSILogic	SAS1064E-IR	1.18.86.00	NU 25:19			
1			LSILogic	SAS1064-IR	1.27.86.00	NV 20:08			

Figure 6. Example of BIOS Discovery

Refer to the firmware package release notes to confirm that the correct firmware level is installed with the package level used.

**Important:** If installing version 2.71, or later, and coming from an earlier version on an HS22 blade, refer to Appendix C, "Appendix C: Procedure for MPTSAS FW upgrade of HS12, HS21-XM, HS21, HS22, HS22V, HX5 and LS20 blades," on page 161.

**Note:** A minimum driver version is required to update the firmware. If the minimum driver version has not been updated, please go to the section, "Updating the Driver for SAS HBAs on x86-64 (Intel or AMD) Host Running Linux" on page 20.

## Procedure

 As root, acquire the new code by going to the following URL and save the file (e.g. ibm\_fw\_mptsas\_bc-sasexp-2.66\_linux\_32-64.bin) onto the Linux blade. http://www.ibm.com/systems/support/supportsite.wss/

brandmain?brandind=5000020

2. From a terminal session on the Linux blade run the following commands:

cd <to the location where the file was saved>
chmod +x ibm\_fw\_mptsas\_bc-sasexp-2.66\_linux\_32-64.bin
./ibm\_fw\_mptsas\_bc-sasexp-2.66\_linux\_32-64.bin -s

The output should be similar to the following figure.

[root@belen temp]# ./ibm\_fw\_mptsas\_bc-sasexp-2.66\_linux\_32-64.bin -s Checking for minimum version mptlinux-4.00.13.10 of /proc/mpt/version Active version of /proc/mpt/version is mptlinux-4.16.80.01 Minimum version detected, continuing.... This update is for the SAS Expansion Card (CFFv) for IBM BladeCenter Controller 1 is a SAS Expansion Card (CFFv) for IBM BladeCenter. Attempting to flash controller 1! Updating firmware on Controller 1. Please wait.... Update of controller 1 firmware completed successfully. Updating BIOS on Controller 1. Please wait.... Update of controller 1 BIOS completed successfully. Updating FCODE on Controller 1. Please wait.... Update of controller 1 BIOS completed successfully.

You must reboot your system to complete the firmware update process. You do not need to reboot your system immediately.

Figure 7. Example output from Linux firmware update

**Note:** There may be a message stating "Controller 2 supported by a separate update". Disregard this message as it applies to further updates that are not included in this release.

- 3. Reboot the host.
- 4. As the host comes back up verify that it reflects the new level of SAS HBA firmware (for example 1.27.86.00) as seen at the bottom of the screen shot below.

Note: This update applies only to the LSILogic SAS1064, not the SAS1064E.

## Configuring SAS Driver Settings on x86-64 (Intel or AMD) Host Running Linux

The following section describes how to perform required changes to the SAS driver settings when using x86-64 (Intel or AMD) host running Linux

## Changing Queue depth and Hot plug settings

To edit the queue depth settings for host blades running the Linux operating system, perform the following steps.

### About this task

**Note:** The actual value used will depend on the number of LUNs mapped to the host. See "Serial Attached SCSI host attachment" on page 12 to review how to calculate the correct settings, then return to this section.

#### Procedure

- 1. In a Linux shell, use vi to open an edit session of the file /etc/modprobe.conf.
- 2. Add the following line to the appropriate modprobe configuration file:

```
For SLES 10 and RHEL 5.x hosts: options mptsas
mpt_sdev_queue_depth=4 mpt_disable_hotplug_remove=1
```

For SLES 11 hosts: options mptsas mpt\_sdev\_queue\_depth=4

For RHEL 6.x hosts with inbox LSI mptsas driver: The queue depth setting will be stated in the following section: Configuring Host System Settings on x86-64 (Intel or AMD) Host Running Linux

```
For BladeCenter HS23/HS23E with inbox LSI mpt2sas driver:
The queue depth setting will be stated in the following
section: Configuring Host System Settings on x86-64
(Intel or AMD) Host Running Linux
```

**Important:** Make sure to update the value in the options line above. See "Serial Attached SCSI host attachment" on page 12 to review how to calculate the correct settings. If there is no entry for the mptsas driver already, add the line at the bottom of the file. Otherwise edit the line that already exists to match these options.

The file should have an entry as highlighted as the following:

```
alias eth0 bnx2
alias eth1 bnx2
alias scsi_hostadapter mptbase
alias scsi_hostadapter1 mptsas
alias scsi_hostadapter2 ata_piix
alias scsi_hostadapter3 usb-storage
options mptsas mpt_sdev_queue_depth=16 mpt_disable_hotplug_remove=1
```

- **3**. Save the file
- 4. The Linux initial RAM disk (initrd) image needs to be rebuilt to pickup the changes made to the driver settings. To rebuild the image, consult the steps specific for the installed version of the Linux operating system.

**Important:** If the driver has been updated on a host that is SAS booted and the host has already been configured for multipathing, please refer to Configuration for Remote SAS Booting on x86-64 (Intel or AMD) Host Running Linux, for host specific steps on updating the initrd image. If the host is not SAS booted, or is initially being set up for SAS booting and is still running in a single path configuration, then continue with the following steps.

a. Back up the initial RAM disk (initrd) image or initial ram-based root file system (initramfs) image by performing the following commands in the Linux shell.

For Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6.x: mv /boot/initramfs-`uname -r`.img initramfs-`uname -r`.img.bak For Red Hat Enterprise Linux 5.x: cd /boot mv initrd-`uname -r`.img initrd-`uname -r`.img.backup For SUSE Linux Enterprise: cd /boot mv initrd-`uname -r` initrd-`uname -r`.backup b. To build the new initrd image: For Red Hat Enterprise Linux 6.x: dracut --force -v /boot/initramfs-`uname -r`.img `uname -r` Red Hat Enterprise Linux: mkinitrd -v /boot/initrd-`uname -r`.img `uname -r` SUSE Linux Enterprise Server: mkinitrd 5. Reboot the server.

# Configuring Host System Settings on x86-64 (Intel or AMD) Host Running Linux

This section describes how to configure host system settings on x86-64 (Intel or AMD) host blade that is running the Linux operating system. The following firmware versions listed is only an example, the current firmware may be at a later version than shown.

## About this task

### SCSI mid-layer timeout: 60 seconds

Verify that the default values are correctly set. To verify the setting, change directory to the /sys/block/sdXX/device, where sdXX is one of the SAS RAID Controller Module devices. View the contents of the file named timeout. For example,

```
[ ... ... ] # cd /sys/block/sdb/device
[ ... ... ] # cat timeout
60
[ ... ... ] #
```

Figure 8. Linux timeout settings

If the value is not set to 60, then use the following procedures to update the setting:

### Procedure

1. To change both the timeout and queue depth setting on the host using inbox mptsas or mpt2sas driver:

Note: Inbox mpt2sas driver is supported on BladeCenter HS23/HS23E.

Change to the uDev rules directory as follows:
 cd /etc/udev/rules.d

For RHEL 6.x create the file named: 50-udev.rules

b. ADD the lines in the file:

```
ACTION=="add", SUBSYSTEM=="scsi", \
SYSFS{type}=="0|7|14", RUN+="/bin/sh -c 'echo 60 > /sys$$DEVPATH/timeout'"
ACTION=="add", SUBSYSTEM=="scsi", \
SYSFS{type}=="0|7|14", RUN+="/bin/sh -c 'echo 4 > /sys$$DEVPATH/queue_depth'"
```

**Important:** Make sure to update the value in the options line above. See "Serial Attached SCSI host attachment" on page 12 to review how to calculate the correct settings. If there is no entry for the mptsas/mpt2sas driver, add the line at the bottom of the file. Otherwise, edit the existing line to match these options.

- c. Save the file and exit the editor.
- d. Reboot the system and then verify the timeout and queue depth value as shown in Linux timeout settings figure.

### 2. To change the timeout setting on SLES10.x or RHEL5.x:

a. Change to the uDev rules directory as follows:

```
cd /etc/udev/rules.d
```

For SLES 10.x edit the file named:

50-udev-default.rules

For RHEL 5.x edit the file named:

50-udev.rules

b. Look for a line similar to:

```
ACTION=="add", SUBSYSTEM=="scsi" , \
SYSFS{type}=="0|7|14", RUN+="/bin/sh -c 'echo YY > \
/sys$$DEVPATH/timeout'"
```

Where YY may be a value other then 60. Set the value to 60 so that the line will look like the following:

```
ACTION=="add", SUBSYSTEM=="scsi" , \
SYSFS{type}=="0|7|14", RUN+="/bin/sh -c 'echo 60 > \
/sys$$DEVPATH/timeout'"
```

- c. Save the file and exit the editor.
- d. Reboot the system and then verify the timeout value as shown in Linux timeout settings figure.

### 3. To change the timeout setting on SLES11.x:

- a. Change to the uDev rules directory.
   cd /etc/udev/rules.d
- b. Create the file 50-scsidisk.rules

vi 50-scsidisk.rules

c. Insert the following lines into the file.

```
ACTION=="add", SUBSYSTEM=="scsi" , \
SYSFS{type}=="0|7|14", RUN+="/bin/sh -c 'echo 60 > \
/sys$$DEVPATH/timeout'"
```

- d. Save the file and exit the editor.
- e. Reboot the system and verify the timeout value as shown in Linux timeout settings figure.

# Configuring the Device Mapper Multipathing Configuration File on x86-64 (Intel or AMD) Host Running Linux

This section describes how to configure the Device Mapper Multipathing configuration file on x86-64 (Intel or AMD) host blade that is running the Linux operating system. The following firmware versions listed are only an example, the current firmware may be at a later version than shown.

## Multipath.conf installation

This section describes the procedures of Multipath.conf installation.

## About this task

The IBM BladeCenter S SAS RAID Controller Module uses the Linux Device Mapper (DM) multipath driver included with each Linux distribution for managing fail-over and fail-back of volumes between the two SAS RAID Controller Modules. However, the default configuration file (/etc/multipath.conf) needs to be replaced by one that has support for the SAS RAID Controller Module (device type 1820). To get the latest version of Linux Device Mapper (DM) Multipath configuration file that provides support for the SAS RAID Controller Module, go to the IBM support web site at:

http://www.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=ssg1S4000107

The multipath configuration files and readmes are located at the bottom of the page.

## Procedure

- 1. For RHEL 6.2 or above hosts
  - a. Generate the DM multipath configuration file to /etc directory as multipath.conf.

mpathconf --enable

b. Confirm the multipath status is enabled by command mpathconf. See the mpathconf main page or run the mpathconf command with the -help option specified for more additional options.

mpathconf
mpathconf --find\_multipaths y
mpathconf --with multipathd y

2. For Linux except for RHEL 6.2 and above hosts

Perform the following steps to update the /etc/multipath.conf:

- a. Download the new DM multipath configuration file for the correct Linux operating system from IBM web site. Refer to the *IBM BladeCenter S SAS RAID Controller Module Interoperability Matrix* for the specific version of the multipath.conf file to use.
- b. Backup the existing /etc/multipath.conf:

cp /etc/multipath.conf /etc/multipath.conf.org

c. Copy the new DM multipath configuration file to /etc directory as multipath.conf

cp <new DM multipath Config file name> \
/etc/multipath.conf

## Additional Settings for Red Hat Enterprise Linux

The following steps are additionally required for setting up multipath when using the RHEL operating system.

There are two RHEL multipath-tools packages - device-mapper-multipath and kpartx - that need to be at the correct level. The following procedure will verify that the minimum levels are installed.

To query the version of these packages, perform the following commands

rpm -qa | grep multipath rpm -qa | grep kpartx

The version numbers for the device-mapper-multipath and kpartx packages that are shipped with Red Hat 5 update 2 are shown below:

```
[... ~]# rpm -qa | grep multipath
device-mapper-multipath-0.4.7-17.el5
[... ~]# rpm -qa | grep kpartx
kpartx-0.4.7-17.el5
[... ~]#
```

**Note:** The minimum version of device-mapper-multipath and kpartx packages that are supported with SAS RAID Controller Module are:

- device-mapper-multipath-0.4.7-12.el5\_1.3
- kpartx-0.4.7-12.el5\_1.3.

The multipath-tools packages can be downloaded from the Red Hat Support Network site, if needed. To install these packages, download them into a directory in the host system and perform the following commands from a Linux shell: rpm -Uvh <device-mapper-multipath-PackageName.rpm> \

<kpartx-PackageName.rpm>

Once completed issue the following commands to verify that the tools are loaded: rpm -qa | grep multipath

rpm -qa | grep kpartx

Verify that the version are now at the minimum levels. If the tools were successfully updated, reboot the host.

Following the reboot, to start the Linux Device Mapper (DM) multipath daemon and configure it to start automatically during future boots, perform the following commands:

service multipathd start chkconfig multipathd on

## Additional Settings for SUSE Linux Enterprise Server

The following steps are additionally required for setting up multipath when using the SLES operating system.

### About this task

### Procedure

- 1. Reboot the blade server.
- Following the reboot, to start the Linux Device Mapper (DM) multipath daemon and configure it to start automatically during future boots, perform the following commands: service multipathd start

chkconfig multipathd on

**3**. To avoid the following error messages on SLES10 Service Pack 2 or later, when accessing multipath tools, edit the prio\_callout in the multipath.conf file.

Note: These changes are already included in the multipath.conf version 3.03

Example of error messages:

```
# multipath -11
sde: Using deprecated prio_callout '/sbin/mpath_prio_alua /dev/%n' (controller setting)
Please fixup /etc/multipath.conf
sdm: Using deprecated prio_callout '/sbin/mpath_prio_alua /dev/%n' (controller setting)
Please fixup /etc/multipath.conf
```

a. Change to the /etc directory as follows:

cd /etc Edit the file named: multipath.conf

b. Look for this line:

prio\_callout "/sbin/mpath\_prio\_alua /dev/%n"

Add a "#" to comment out that line and then add "prio alua" on the line below the commented line. See below for what the edits should look like: #prio callout "/sbin/mpath prio alua /dev/%n"

prio alua

c. Save the file and exit the editor.

## Multipath Configuration file setting considerations Linux HA Clustering Environments

If a Linux host will be setup for Linux HA clustering, it may be required to modify the multipath.conf file settings for the SAS RAID Controller Module so that proper HA failover occurs should one of the HA nodes fail to access the SAS RAID Controller Module. The following describes how to modify the settings.

The default settings that are used with the SAS RAID Controller Module are defined in the multipath.conf configuration file as follows:

```
device {
    vendor "IBM"
    product "1820N00"
    ...
    no_path_retry queue
}
...
```

In the default configuration, the entry **no\_path\_retry**, is set to **queue** by default. This will cause the Linux host to continue to queue commands even when all paths to the SAS RAID Controller Module are offline. In non-HA environments, this allows for transient failures to occur where both paths may be offline for short periods of time. However, this may not be the desired behavior in a Linux HA Cluster environment. This setting can be modified to a value greater then zero to attempt a number of retries, or it may be set to fail, to cause the host to fail immediately if no path is available. Depending on the requirements of the configuration this setting may need to be modified to allow for expected operation.

# Configuration for Remote SAS Booting on x86-64 (Intel or AMD) Host Running Linux

The following section describes how to configure Remote SAS Booting on x86-64 (Intel or AMD) host running Linux.

Refer to Appendix B, "Appendix B: SAS Boot Pre-Operating System Installation Activities," on page 157, to validate that the system is ready to install a SAS booted operating system.

## **Operating system installation**

Use the applicable procedures and instructions that are provided with your operating system software to configure the operating system on the boot volume that is mapped to the blade server. It is not the intention of this document to show how to install the operating systems or to select which software packages will be installed or required for the initial installation of the operating system.

Depending on the operating system version, you might have to provide the SAS expansion card device driver during the installation so that the operating system can recognize the mapped boot volume from the SAS RAID Controller Module. Follow the appropriate instructions for your operating system to specify the use of a SAS HBA device driver that is not included in the operating system image.

For Red Hat 5 installation only, the default disk partitioning will create / (root) and swap partitions using a Logical Volume Management (LVM) volume group. For installation to complete successfully you must edit the default boot partitions so that they are not managed by LVM. It is recommended to create all partitions manually not using LVM. It is further recommended to ensure that the "Force to be Primary partition" check box is checked when manually creating the / (root) and swap partitions. Please review carefully the post-installation steps because the tasks are slightly different depending on whether disk partitions are created using LVM or not.

**Note**: When installing a Linux operating system, knowledge of boot failure recovery using the rescue CD and editing the boot grub entry on-the-fly will be useful. Incorrect modifications to enable multipath might result in failure to boot into the Linux initrd image.

## Post-Operating system installation activities

The following steps should be performed after the Linux operating system has been installed.

**Important:** After completing any topic outside this section, return to this section of the document to complete any remaining steps.

Before proceeding:

- update the SAS device driver and multipath driver as detailed in the section titled "Updating the Driver for SAS HBAs on x86-64 (Intel or AMD) Host Running Linux" on page 20.
- Update the host based settings as detailed in the section titled "Configuring SAS Driver Settings on x86-64 (Intel or AMD) Host Running Linux" on page 24.
- Enable multipath as detailed in the section titled "Configuring the Device Mapper Multipathing Configuration File on x86-64 (Intel or AMD) Host Running Linux" on page 28.

### **RHEL Specific Instructions**

The following instructions are only used for RHEL based operating systems.

#### About this task

**Note:** The following instructions are only used for RHEL based operating systems. For SLES based operating systems, refer to "SLES Specific Instructions" on page 42.

#### Procedure

1. The following steps will update the multipath bindings file:

To obtain the WWID of the boot volume, which should be /dev/sda, issue the following command. The boot disk can also be confirmed by issuing the 'df' command.

```
[... ~]#/sbin/scsi_id -g -u -s /block/sda
36005076b0740c0ff000000000000025
[... ~]#
```

Figure 9. Sample scsi\_id output

**Note:** For RHEL 6.2 or later, the command should be issued as below to obtain the WWID of boot volume.

```
[... ~]#/sbin/scsi_id -g -u -d /dev/sda
36005076b0740c0ff0000000000000025
[... ~]#
```

Figure 10. Sample scsi\_id output in RHEL 6.2

Edit /var/lib/multipath/bindings and verify or add the WWID as mpath0 as needed.

```
# Multipath bindings, Version : 1.0
# NOTE: this file is automatically maintained by the multipath
program.
# You should not need to edit this file in normal circumstances.
#
# Format:
# alias wwid
#
mpath0 36005076b0740c0ff00000000000025
```

Figure 11. A sample of the /var/lib/multipath/bindings file.

**Note:** For RHEL 6.2 or later, Edit /etc/multipath/bindings and verify or add the WWID as mpath0 as needed.

```
# Multipath bindings, Version : 1.0
# NOTE: this file is automatically maintained by the multipath
program.
# You should not need to edit this file in normal circumstances.
#
# Format:
# alias wwid
#
mpath0 3500c5000660ce43
```

Figure 12. A sample of the /etc/multipath/bindings file.

**Note:** For RHEL 6.2 or later, if the devices are currently running single path, then it is advised to add the WWID in the /etc/multipath/wwids file.

```
[root@RSSM6-3 ~]# cat /etc/multipath/wwids
# Multipath wwids, Version : 1.0
# NOTE: This file is automatically maintained by multipath and
multipathd.
# You should not need to edit this file in normal circumstances.
#
# Valid WWIDs:
/36005076b0741aaff4f0dc28900001c9f/
[root@RSSM6-3 ~]#
```

Figure 13. A sample adding the WWID in the/etc/multipath/wwids file

2. Skip the following steps if you created the disk partitions using Logical Volume Management (LVM),

Edit /etc/fstab replacing existing entry for / (root) and swap partitions (and other partitions created on the boot volume during the initial operating system installation) with /dev/mapper/mpath0px where x in the number that corresponds to the disk partition number. The /etc/fstab file example below shows the modifications to the file using mpath0p1 and mpath0p2 for /dev/sda1 and /dev/sda2, respectively.

<pre>/dev/mapper/mpath0p1 #LABEL=/</pre>	1	ext3 ext3	defaults defaults	1 1	1 1
tmpfs	/dev/shm	tmpfs	defaults	0	0
devpts	/dev/pts	devpts	gid=5,mode=620	0	0
sysfs	/sys	sysfs	defaults	0	0
proc	/proc	proc	defaults	0	0
#LABEL=SWAP-sda21	swap	swap	defaults	0	0
/dev/mapper/mpath0p2	swap	swap	defaults	0	0

Figure 14. A modified /etc/fstab file when not using LVM

**Note:** The p1 and p2 suffix to "mpath0" refer to the partitions on /dev/sda. In the above /etc/fstab file modification example, the df command would have shown:

[ ~]# df Filesystem	1K-blocks	Used	Available	IISO%	Mounted	on
I I I CO JOCCIII	THE DECORD	obca	IIV GITT GOTO	00000	mouncea	011
/dev/sda1	11904588	2465784	8824320	22%	/	

### Figure 15. df command

And the "swapon -s " command would have shown:

[ ~]# swapon	-s			
Filename	Туре	Size	Used	Priority
/dev/sda2	partition	3068404	0	-1

Figure 16. swapon –s

Another example of the modified /etc/fstab file is shown below. The mpath devices /dev/mapper/mpath0p1, /dev/mapper/mpath0p2 and /dev/mapper/mpath0p3 are used to replace /dev/sda1, /dev/sda2 and /dev/sda3 devices for the /boot, / (root) and swap partitions, respectively.

[~]# df						
Filesystem	1K-blocks	Used	Availab	le Use%	Mount	ed
on						
/dev/sda3	32586216	3186572	277176	40 11%	1	
/dev/sda1	101086	13368	824	99 14%	/boot	
tmpfs	1492312	0	14923	12 0%	/dev/	shm
[ ~]# swapon -s						
Filename	Type		Size	Used	Prior	ity
/dev/sda2	partit	cion	819314	0 0	-1	
[ ~]# cat /etc/fst	tab					
/dev/mapper/mpath0p3	1	ext	:3 de	faults		1 1
#LABEL=/	1	ext	c3 de	faults		1 1
/dev/mapper/mpath0p1	/boot	ext	t3 de	faults		1 2
#LABEL=/boot	/boot	ext	t3 de	faults		1 2
tmpfs	/dev/shn	n <mark>t</mark> mp	ofs de	faults		0 0
devpts	/dev/pts	det det	npts gi	d=5, mode	e=620	0 0
sysfs	/sys	sys	sfs de	faults		0 0
proc	/proc	pro	oc de	faults		0 0
/dev/mapper/mpath0p2	swap	SWa	ap de	faults		0 0
#LABEL=SWAP-sda2	swap	SWa	ap de	faults		0 0

Figure 17. Another example of modified /etc/fstab file when not using LVM

**3.** If using LVM for the / (root) and swap disk partitions, only edit the /boot entry in /etc/fstab. Since the / (root) and swap partitions are mounted on LVM partitions, they will be set up correctly by default. For example, if the df and swapon -s command output are as follows, the modifications to the /etc/fstab would be as shown below:

[ ~]# df					
Filesystem	1K-blocks	Used	Available	Use%	Mounted on
/dev/mapper/VolG	roup00-LogVol00				
	38533760	3187220	33357524	9%	1
/dev/sda1	101086	11875	83992	13%	/boot
tmpfs	1557848	0	1557848	0%	/dev/shm

[ ~]# swapon -s				
Filename	Type	Size	Used	Priority
/dev/mapper/VolGroup00-LogVol01 -1		partition	20316	08 0

[ ~]# cat /etc/fsta	ab				
/dev/VolGroup00/LogVol	00 /	ext3	defaults	1	1
/dev/mapper/mpath0p1	/boot	ext3	defaults	1	2
#LABEL=/boot	/boot	ext3	defaults	1	2
tmpfs	/dev/shm	tmpfs	defaults	0	0
devpts	/dev/pts	devpts	gid=5,mode=620	0	0
sysfs	/sys	sysfs	defaults	0	0
proc	/proc	proc	defaults	0	0
/dev/VolGroup00/LogVol	01 swap	swap	defaults	0	0

Figure 18. A modified /etc/fstab file when using LVM

- 4. (LVM only) Edit the /etc/lvm/lvm.conf file as follows:
  - Locate the filter section in /etc/lvm/lvm.conf file
  - If there is already a filter section active, add "a|/dev/mapper/mpath|" to the filtered list.
  - If there is no filter section active, then add a filter with the following:

filter = ["a|/dev/mapper/mpath|","a|/dev/sda|","r|.\*|"]

• Locate the types section in the /etc/lvm/lvm.conf file and add the following line:

types = [ "mpath", 16 ]

```
... ... ...
# A filter that tells LVM2 to only use a restricted set of
devices.
# The filter consists of an array of regular expressions. These
# expressions can be delimited by a character of your choice, and
# prefixed with either an 'a' (for accept) or 'r' (for reject).
# The first expression found to match a device name determines if
# the device will be accepted or rejected (ignored). Devices
that
# don't match any patterns are accepted.
# Be careful if there are symbolic links or multiple filesystem
# entries for the same device as each name is checked separately
against
# the list of patterns. The effect is that if any name matches
any 'a'
# pattern, the device is accepted; otherwise if any name matches
any 'r'
# pattern it is rejected; otherwise it is accepted.
# Don't have more than one filter line active at once: only one
gets used.
# Run vgscan after you change this parameter to ensure that
# the cache file gets regenerated (see below).
# If it doesn't do what you expect, check the output of 'vgscan -
vvvv'.
# By default we accept every block device:
# filter = [ "a/.*/" ]
# Exclude the cdrom drive
# filter = [ "r|/dev/cdrom|" ]
# When testing I like to work with just loopback devices:
# filter = [ "a/loop/", "r/.*/" ]
# Or maybe all loops and ide drives except hdc:
# filter =[ "a|loop|", "r|/dev/hdc|", "a|/dev/ide|", "r|.*|" ]
# Or for SAS RAID Controller Module multipath
filter =[ "a|/dev/mapper/mpath|", "a|/dev/sda|", "r|.*|" ]
# Use anchors if you want to be really specific
# filter = [ "a|^/dev/hda8$|", "r/.*/" ]
# Advanced settings.
. . . . . . . . .
# List of pairs of additional acceptable block device types found
# in /proc/devices with maximum (non-zero) number of partitions.
# types = [ "fd", 16 ]
types = [ "mpath", 16 ]
# If sysfs is mounted (2.6 kernels) restrict device scanning to
... ... ...
```

Figure 19. A snippet of the modified /etc/lvm/lvm.conf file

Note:

- This will modify how LVM can detect LVM managed volumes. If LVM is managing non-multipath devices, then the filter section will need to be modified to also include the additional volumes managed.
- The device /dev/sda must be included in the filter section. Without this device, when rebuilding initrd LVM would not see any LVM partitions and would not configure LVM.

Attention: Skip steps 5 and 6 in RHEL 6.2 or later to use default settings.

- 5. Copy /sbin/mkinitrd file to /sbin/mkinitrd.mpath and edit that file so that mpath entries are correctly included and rebuild the initrd image.
- 6. The following changes need to be made to /sbin/mkinitrd.mpath:
  - Line 991 (Approx): use multipath=1
  - Line 1330 (Approx): Comment out the following three lines:

```
#for wwid in $root_wwids ; do
# emit "/bin/multipath -v 0 $wwid"
#done
```

And add the following line:

emit "/bin/multipath -v 0"

The result at line 1330 should look like the following when completed:

```
if [ "$use_multipath" == "1" ]; then
emit "echo Creating multipath devices"
    #for wwid in $root_wwids ; do
    # emit "/bin/multipath -v 0 $wwid"
    #done
    emit "/bin/multipath -v 0"
emit "dmsetup ls --target multipath --exec 'kpartx -a -p p'"
fi
```



Note: Above change is already included in RHEL5.7 or above.

7. Use /sbin/mkinitrd.mpath to build a new Linux initrd image as follows (Note: this command should be entered on a single line not as two lines as shown):

```
/sbin/mkinitrd.mpath -f -v --with=dm-round-robin \
/boot/initrd-`uname -r`.mpath.img.gz `uname -r`
```

**Note:** Whenever the initrd image must be rebuilt, the edited mkinitrd.mpath must be used. Otherwise, an invalid initrd image will be created and may result in the system not booting successfully.

For RHEL 6.2 or later, the following command should be used instead to build a new Linux initrd image. (Note: this command should be entered on a single line not as two lines as shown):

dracut --force -v /boot/initramfs-`uname -r`.img `uname -r`

8. Edit /boot/grub/menu.lst to boot to the new Linux initrd image that is created in the above step. Make a copy of the lines that already exist after hiddenmenu. Modify the "title" and "initrd" lines as shown below to provide a new title and point to the Linux initrd image with multipath enabled for the

boot volume. In addition, depending on whether LVM was used during the disk partitioning or not, the "kernel" line may need to be modified. If LVM is not used, the root parameter in the "kernel" line must be modified to point to a /dev/mapper/mpath\_pX device that replaces the /dev/sdaX device of the / (root) partition (e.g. change /dev/sda1 to /dev/mapper/mpath0p1 or /dev/sda3 to /dev/mapper/). If LVM is used, leave the root parameter intact as it should already point to a volume in a volume group (e.g. /dev/VolGroup00/LogVol00).

**Note:** If the RHEL OS was installed under UEFI mode, then the path of boot menu file would be /boot/efi/EFI/redhat/grub.conf

```
title Red Hat Enterprise Linux Server mpath (2.6.18-274.el5)
root (hd0,0)
kernel /vmlinuz-2.6.18-274.el5 ro root=/dev/mapper/mpath0p1 rhgb
verbose
initrd /initrd-2.6.18-274.el5.mpath.img.gz
```

Figure 21. Modified /boot/grub/menu.lst file when not using LVM for RHEL5.7

```
title Red Hat Enterprise Linux Server mpath (2.6.18-92.el5)
root (hd0,0)

kernel /boot/vmlinuz-2.6.18-92.el5 ro root=/dev/mapper/mpath0p1
rhgb verbose
initrd /boot/initrd-2.6.18-92.el5.mpath.img.gz
title Red Hat Enterprise Linux Server (2.6.18-53.el5)
root (hd0,0)
kernel /boot/vmlinuz-2.6.18-53.el5 ro root=LABEL=/ rhgb quiet
initrd /boot/initrd-2.6.18-53.el5.img
```

Figure 22. A sample of the modified /boot/grub/menu.lst file when not using LVM

```
title Red Hat Enterprise Linux Server mpath (2.6.18-92.el5)
root (hd0,0)
kernel /vmlinuz-2.6.18-92.el5 ro root=/dev/VolGroup00/LogVol00
rhgb quiet
initrd /initrd-2.6.18-92.el5.mpath.img.gz
title Red Hat Enterprise Linux Server (2.6.18-92.el5)
root (hd0,0)
kernel /vmlinuz-2.6.18-92.el5 ro root=/dev/VolGroup00/LogVol00
rhgb quiet
initrd /initrd-2.6.18-92.el5.img
```

Figure 23. A sample of the modified /boot/grub/menu.lst file when using LVM

- **9**. Before rebooting the blade server to enable multipath on the boot volume, take a moment to make sure that all of the steps described above are performed correctly. Any mistakes or omissions may mean that you will not be able to boot into Linux and you will have to use the Linux rescue CD to recover.
- **10.** Once rebooted, verify that the multipath –ll command produces output similar to this example:

```
# multipath -11
mpath0 (36005076b0740c0ff00000000000000025) dm-0 IBM,1820N00
[size=15G][features=0][hwhandler=0]
\_ round-robin 0 [prio=50][active]
\_ 0:0:0:0 sda 8:0 [active][ready]
```

Figure 24. The multipath\_command\_produces\_output

11. Verify that the blade server is configured correctly using the following commands. In each of these commands, mpath0pX devices should be seen instead of /dev/sdaX.

df swapon —s

With LVM enabled on the boot volume, the output should be similar to this. Note that the /dev/mapper/mpath0p1 device is displayed instead of the /dev/sda1.

```
[...~]# df
           1K-blocks
Filesystem
                            Used Available Use% Mounted on
/dev/mapper/VolGroup00-LogVol00
                   38533760 3271976 33272768 9% /
                    101086 27276 68591 29% /boot
/dev/mapper/mpath0p1
                             0 1557848 0% /dev/shm
tmpfs
                    1557848
[... ~]# swapon -s
Filename
                               Туре
                                         Size Used
Priority
/dev/mapper/VolGroup00-LogVol01
                               partition 2031608 0
                                                    -1
[...~]#
```

Figure 25. The output with LVM

Without LVM, the output should be similar to this:

[~]# df					
Filesystem	1K- <mark>block</mark> s	Used	Available	Use%	Mounted
on					
/dev/mapper/mpath0p3	36554540	3197732	31469976	10%	/
/dev/mapper/mpath0p1	101086	21364	74503	23%	/boot
tmpfs	1557848	0	1557848	0%	/dev/shm
/dev/sdb1	1991948	1827432	164516	92%	
/media/BADCRUZER					
[ ~]# swapon -s					
Filename	T	ype	Size	U	sed
Priority					
/dev/mapper/mpath0p2	pa	artition	4096	564 0	-1
[~]#					
[ ~]# 1s /dev/mapp	per/				
control mpath0 mpat	h0p1 mpath	10p2 mpat	th0p3		
[ ~]#					

Figure 26. The output without LVM

12. The second path to the boot volume can now be added to the system using the normal SAS RAID Controller Module processes such as SCM or the SAS RAID Controller Module CLI. Other data volumes can also be mapped to both ports of the blade server SAS adapters at this time. To rescan for devices dynamically on Linux, use the following command:

```
for i in `ls -ld /sys/class/scsi_host/*`; do
    echo $i/scan; echo "- - -" > $i/scan;
done
```

13. When the second path to the boot volume is seen by the Linux DM multipath daemon, the multipath –ll command should show two available paths to the boot volume as follows. If the number of available paths is not shown correctly, verify the mapping of volumes to SAS adapter ports using the SAS RAID Controller Module CLI interface or the SCM client and then reboot the server.

[ ~]# multipath -ll	
mpath0 (36005076b0740c0ff000000000000025)	dm-0 IBM, 1820N00
[size=15G][features=0][hwhandler=0]	
\ round-robin 0 [prio=50][active]	
\ 0:0:0:0 sda 8:0 [active][ready]	
<pre>\ round-robin 0 [prio=10][enabled]</pre>	
<pre>\ 0:0:1:0 sdb 8:16 [active][ready]</pre>	

Figure 27. The multipath -II command

If there are more than one volume mapped to the blade server, one would see them displayed as shown below.

```
[... ~]# multipath -11
\mpath1 (36005076b07412fff48f0e2750000009) dm-1 IBM,1820N00
[size=40G][features=1 queue_if_no_path][hwhandler=0]
\_ round-robin 0 [prio=50][enabled]
\_ 0:0:0:1 sdb 8:16 [active][ready]
mpath0 (36005076b07412fff48ed04c100000003) dm-0 IBM,1820N00
[size=40G][features=1 queue_if_no_path][hwhandler=0]
\_ round-robin 0 [prio=50][active]
\_ 0:0:0:0 sda 8:0 [active][ready]
\_ round-robin 0 [prio=10][enabled]
\_ 0:0:1:0 sdc 8:32 [active][ready]
[... ~]#
```

Figure 28. More than one volume - multipath command

14. (Optional) If using LVM, the device /dev/sda can now be removed from the filter section as multipath is now being used to manage the root volume. If this is done the mkinitrd.mpath script needs to be run again to update the Linux initrd image with the new LVM settings. Reboot the server to the new Linux initrd image.

### **SLES Specific Instructions**

Perform the following steps to complete the installation of SLES Linux operating system on a SAS RAID Controller Module boot volume.

### About this task

**Note:** The following instructions are only used for SLES based operating systems. For RHEL based operating systems, refer to "RHEL Specific Instructions" on page 32.

Steps 1, 6, 7, 8, 9, and 10 are performed only when the rebuilding of initial RAM disk (initrd) is needed.

#### Procedure

1. Edit multipath.conf and turn off 'user\_friendly\_names' by commenting the line out as shown below.

ae.	Lauius (	
	polling_interval	30
	failback	immediate
	no_path_retry	5
	rr_min_io	100
	path_checker	tur
#	user_friendly_name	s yes
	···· ··· ···	

Figure 29. A snippet of the modified /etc/multipath.conf in SLES

Note: This option will need to be turned back on later in step 9.

- 2. Perform the following command to get the WWID of your boot volume (e.g. mpath 0)
  - For SLES 10.x: /sbin/scsi\_id -g -u -s /block/sda

```
[... ~]#/sbin/scsi_id -g -u -s /block/sda
36005076b0740c0ff000000000000025
[... ~]#
```

Figure 30. Example output of scsi\_id command for SLES 10

 For SLES 11.1: /lib/udev/scsi\_id -g -u -d /dev/sda

```
[... ~]# /lib/udev/scsi_id -g -u -d /dev/sda
35000c5000b930b3f
[... ~]#
```

Figure 31. Example output of scsi\_id command for SLES 11.1

 For SLES 11.2: /lib/udev/scsi\_id --whitelisted -device=/dev/sda

```
[... ~]# /lib/udev/scsi_id --whitelisted -device=/dev/sda
35000c5000b930b3f
[... ~]#
```

Figure 32. Example output of scsi\_id command for SLES 11.2

 For SLES 11.3: /lib/udev/scsi id --page=0x83 --whitelisted --device=/dev/sda

```
linux-xslr:- # /lib/udev/scsi_id --page=0x83 --whitelisted --device=/dev/sda
3500000e1131087e0
linux-xslr:- # _
```

Figure 33. Example output of scsi\_id command for SLES 11.3

**3**. Edit the /var/lib/multipath/bindings file and add an alias for mpatha as the WWID. If the binding line does not exist, create one.

Note: For SLES 11.2 or later, edit the /etc/multipath/bindings file

```
# Multipath bindings, Version : 1.0
# NOTE: this file is automatically maintained by the multipath
program.
# You should not need to edit this file in normal circumstances.
#
# Format:
# alias wwid
#
mpatha 36005076b0740c0ff000000000025
```

Figure 34. Example edit of multipath bindings file

4. Add "dm-multipath dm-round-robin" multipath modules to the INITRD\_MODULES line in the /etc/sysconfig/kernel.

Figure 35. A snippet of the modified /etc/sysconfig/kernel file

5. Make sure that the / (root) and swap device are referenced in /etc/fstab by their by-id device node entries instead of /dev/sd\* type names. An example of an /etc/fstab file is shown below. Note that the / (root) and swap devices both begin with /dev/disk/by-id/

/dev/disk/by-id/s	csi-36005076b07412fff48	ed04ed00000	006-part2 /		
reiserfs acl,us	er_xattr 11				
/dev/disk/by-id/scsi-36005076b07412fff48ed04ed00000006-part1 swap					
swap defaul	ts 00				
proc	/proc	proc	defaults		
0 0					
sysfs	/sys	sysfs	noauto		
0 0					
debugfs	/sys/kernel/debug	debugfs	noauto		
0 0					
usbfs	/proc/bus/usb	usbfs	noauto		
0 0					
devpts	/dev/pts	devpts			
mode=0620,gid=5	0 0				

Figure 36. An example of /etc/fstab file in SLES10

- Backup the exiting initrd file
   cp /boot/initrd-`uname -r` /boot/initrd-`uname -r`-orig
- Create the new bootloader with mkinitrd mkinitrd -f mpath

**Note:** For SLES 11.2 or later, use the following line. mkinitrd -f multipath

8. Edit /boot/grub/menu.lst and add in a boot by-id for root and resume as shown below. Also modify secondary boot initrd.

Example changes are in bold. The first boot entry was added to the file.

```
# Modified by YaST2. Last modification on Thu Oct 9 14:35:42 UTC
2008
default 0
timeout 8
##YaST - generic mbr
qfxmenu (hd0,1)/boot/message
##YaST - activate
###Don't change this comment - YaST2 identifier: Original name:
linux###
title SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 10 mpath SP2
   root (hd0,1)
   kernel /boot/vmlinuz-2.6.16.60-0.21-smp root=/dev/disk/by-
id/scsi-36005076b07412fff48ed04ed00000006-part2 vga=0x317
resume=/dev/sda1 splash=silent showopts
   initrd /boot/initrd-2.6.16.60-0.21-smp
###Don't change this comment - YaST2 identifier: Original name:
linux###
title SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 10 SP2
   root (hd0,1)
   kernel /boot/vmlinuz-2.6.16.60-0.21-smp root=/dev/disk/by-
id/scsi-36005076b07412fff48ed04ed00000006-part2 vga=0x317
resume=/dev/sda1 splash=silent showopts
   initrd /boot/initrd-2.6.16.60-0.21-smp-orig
###Don't change this comment - YaST2 identifier: Original name:
failsafe###
title Failsafe -- SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 10 SP2
   root (hd0,1)
    kernel /boot/vmlinuz-2.6.16.60-0.21-smp root=/dev/disk/by-
id/scsi-36005076b07412fff48ed04ed00000006-part2 vga=normal
showopts ide=nodma apm=off acpi=off noresume edd=off 3
    initrd /boot/initrd-2.6.16.60-0.21-smp
```

Figure 37. A sample of the modified /boot/grub/menu.lst in SLES 10

9. Re-enable user\_friendly\_names in multipath.conf file by remove the # that was placed in front of user\_friendly\_names earlier in this process.

**Important:** When ever the initrd image is built, the user\_friendly\_names must be commented out before building the initrd image, then uncommented before rebooting.

- **10.** Reboot the host. Make sure the first boot image is loaded (the first option in the menu.lst above)
- 11. Check to see that multipath has picked up and partitioned your boot device by performing the following commands in the blade server telnet session or Command Line terminal window:

```
multipath -ll
ls /dev/mapper
df
swapon -s
```

```
[... ~] # multipath -ll
mpatha (36005076b07412fff48ed04ed00000006) dm-0 IBM,1820N00
[size=40G] [features=0] [hwhandler=0]
\_ round-robin 0 [prio=50][active]
\_ 2:0:0:0 sda 8:0 [active][ready]
[... ~]# ls /dev/mapper
control mpatha mpatha-part1 mpatha-part2
[... ~]# df
Filesystem
               1K-blocks Used Available Use% Mounted
on
/dev/dm-2
                  39831932 2622784 37209148 7% /
                   1545864 152 1545712 1% /dev
udev
[... ~] # swapon-s
                   Type Size
          Type 5120
partition 2104472 0
                                          Used Priority
Filename
/dev/dm-1
                                                -1
```

Figure 38. Example output for checking SLES multipath configuration

- 12. The second path of the boot volume can now be added to the system using the normal SAS RAID Controller Module processes such as SCM or SAS RAID Controller Module CLI. Other data volumes can also be mapped to both ports of the blade server SAS HBA at this time.
- **13.** Reboot the blade server to get the second path and additional volumes recognized by the blade server.
- 14. When the second path to the boot volume is seen by the Linux DM multipath daemon, the multipath –ll command should show two available paths to the boot volume as follows. If the number of available paths is not shown correctly, check the volume(s) to SAS adapter port mapping using the SAS RAID Controller Module CLI interface or the SCM client and reboot the server.

```
[... ~]# multipath -11
mpatha (36005076b07412fff48ed04ed00000006) dm-0 IBM,1820N00
[size=40G][features=0][hwhandler=0]
\_ round-robin 0 [prio=50][active]
\_ 2:0:0:0 sda 8:0 [active][ready]
\_ round-robin 0 [prio=10][enabled]
\_ 2:0:1:0 sdb 8:16 [active][ready]
[... ~]#
```

Figure 39. The multipath -II command

If there are more than one volume mapped to the blade server, one would see them displayed as shown below.
```
[... ~]# SAS RAID Controller Module-Sles10:~ # multipath -11
mpathb (36005076b07412fff48f0e2bd000000a) dm-0 IBM,1820N00
[size=40G][features=0][hwhandler=0]
\_ round-robin 0 [prio=50][active]
\_ 2:0:0:1 sdb 8:16 [active][ready]
\_ round-robin 0 [prio=10][enabled]
\_ 2:0:1:1 sdd 8:48 [active][ready]
mpatha (36005076b07412fff48ed04ed00000006) dm-1 IBM,1820N00
[size=40G][features=0][hwhandler=0]
\_ round-robin 0 [prio=50][active]
\_ 2:0:0:0 sda 8:0 [active][ready]
\_ round-robin 0 [prio=10][enabled]
\_ 2:0:1:0 sdc 8:32 [active][ready]
[... ~]#
```

Figure 40. More than one volume mapped to the blade server-the multipath --II command

### Troubleshooting

This section covers currently known issues with using the IBM BladeCenter S SAS RAID Controller Module with the host blades running the Linux operating system.

#### Concurrent controller maintenance procedure

When performing some maintenance procedures on the SAS RAID Controller Module, one path to data volumes will become not available temporarily. These procedures include:

- 1. Replace one of the controllers.
- 2. Shutdown one of the controllers to service mode and then reboot it.
- 3. Power off one of the controllers in AMM and then power it on.
- 4. Reboot one of the controllers.

To ensure the host I/O will not be disturbed by the maintenance, please make sure that all paths are restored after the SAS RAID Controller Module has been rebooted or replaced.

After the maintenance operation is complete, first verify the controllers are in bound state by issuing the following commands:

<CLI> list controller Current Machine Local Time: 08/12/2013 02:35:17 PM

Ct1r#	Controller	Status	Ports	LUNs
0	Ct1r0	PRIMARY	1	0
1 <mark>1  </mark>	Ct1r11	SECONDARY I	11	01

#### Figure 41. Commands

Secondly, check the host blade multipathing has restored all available paths to both SAS RAID Controller Modules. To perform this check on the host blade run the following command as root:

~> multipath -11

The output of the command should be similar to the following, showing two paths to each volume:

```
mpath0 (36005076b074060ff49a7ad800000003d) dm-0 IBM,1820N00
[size=40G][features=1 queue_if_no_path][hwhandler=0]
\_ round-robin 0 [prio=50][active]
\_ 1:0:8:0 sda 8:16 [active][ready]
\_ round-robin 0 [prio=10][enabled]
\_ 1:0:9:0 sdc 8:176 [active][ready]
mpath1 (36005076b074060ff48e10daa00000020) dm-1 IBM,1820N00
[size=2.0G][features=1 queue_if_no_path][hwhandler=0]
\_ round-robin 0 [prio=50][enabled]
\_ 1:0:8:1 sdb 8:48 [active][ready]
\_ round-robin 0 [prio=10][enabled]
\_ 1:0:9:1 sdd 8:208 [active][ready]
```

If the output shows only one path or a mix of paths to the SAS RAID Controller Modules, then run the following command to restore the redundant paths: ~> multipath

Verify that after running the above command all paths become available using the following command:

~> multipath -11

## Multipath verification in a SAS booted host running RHEL 6.2

When performing maintenance that causes a reboot on the SAS booted host running RHEL 6.2, it is possible that part of the multipath entries may not be restored after rebooting.

After the maintenance operation is complete, verify that the host blade multipathing has restored all available entries. To perform this verification on the host blade, check all the multipath entries are correctly configured in /dev/mapper.

If the output of the multipath entries looks similar to the following (only showing part of the configured entries):

[root@RSSM	mapper]# ls	/dev/mapper		
control	mpathcp2	mpathhp3	mpathlp4	mpathop4
mpatha	mpathcp3	mpathhp4	mpathmp1	mpathp
mpathapl	mpathcp4	mpathjp4	mpathmp3	mpathpp1
mpathap2	mpathdp2	mpathlp1	mpathop1	mpathpp2
mpathap3	mpathhp1	mpath1p2	mpathop2	mpathpp3
mpathcp1	mpathhp2	mpathlp3	mpathop3	mpathpp4

Download and install the updated device-mapper-multipath packages to fix this issue. Go to Red Hat Customer Portal website at http://rhn.redhat.com/errata/RHBA-2012-0946.htmlfor more information.

Verify that after the packages are installed the above command, all entries restored correctly under /dev/mapper:

[root@RSSM	mapper]# mult	tipath		
[root@RSSM	mapper]# ls			
control	mpathbp3	mpathdp1	mpathep4	mpathgp2
npatha	mpathbp4	mpathdp2	mpathf	mpathgp3
npathap1	mpathc	mpathdp3	mpathfp1	mpathgp4
mpathap2	mpathcp1	mpathdp4	mpathfp2	mpathh
mpathap3	mpathcp2	mpathe	mpathfp3	mpathhp1
npathb	mpathcp3	mpathep1	mpathfp4	mpathhp2
npathbp1	mpathcp4	mpathep2	mpathg	mpathhp3
npathbp2	mpathd	mpathep3	mpathgp1	mpathhp4

## Multipath verification in a SAS booted host running SLES 11 SP3

When performing maintenance that causes a reboot on the SAS booted host running SLES 11 SP3, part of the multipath entries may not be restored after rebooting.

After the maintenance operation is complete, verify that the host blade multipathing has restored all available entries. To perform this verification on the host blade, check all the multipath entries are correctly configured in /dev/mapper.

linux-pwbp:	~	<b>#</b> 1s	/dev/	map	per/	-1					
total O											
crw-rw	1	root	root	10,	236	Jul	25	16:37	control		
lrwxrwxrwx	1	root	root		8	Jul	25	16:38	mpathb_part1	->	/dm-11
lrwxrwxrwx	1	root	root		8	Jul	25	16:38	mpathb_part2	->	/dm-12
lrwxrwxrwx	1	root	root		8	Jul	25	16:38	mpathb_part3	->	/dm-13
lrwxrwxrwx	1	root	root		8	Jul	25	16:38	mpathb_part4	->	/dm-14
lrwxrwxrwx	1	root	root		8	Jul	25	16:38	mpathc_part1	->	/dm-19
lrwxrwxrwx	1	root	root		8	Jul	25	16:38	mpathc_part2	->	/dm-20
lrwxrwxrwx	1	root	root		8	Jul	25	16:38	mpathc_part3	->	/dm-21
lrwxrwxrwx	1	root	root		8	Jul	25	16:38	mpathc_part4	->	/dm-22
lrwxrwxrwx	1	root	root		8	Jul	25	16:38	mpathd_part1	->	/dm-15
lrwxrwxrwx	1	root	root		8	Jul	25	16:38	mpathd_part2	->	/dm-16
lrwxrwxrwx	1	root	root		8	Jul	25	16:38	mpathd_part3	->	/dm-17
lrwxrwxrwx	1	root	root		8	Jul	25	16:38	mpathd_part4	->	/dm-18
lrwxrwxrwx	1	root	root		8	Jul	25	16:38	mpathe_part1	->	/dm-23
lrwxrwxrwx	1	root	root		8	Jul	25	16:38	mpathe_part2	->	/dm-24
lrwxrwxrwx	1	root	root		8	Jul	25	16:38	mpathe_part3	->	/dm-25
lrwxrwxrwx	1	root	root		8	Jul	25	16:38	mpathe_part4	->	$\ldots/dm-26$
lrwxrwxrwx	1	root	root		8	Jul	25	16:38	mpathf_part1	->	/dm-31
lrwxrwxrwx	1	root	root		8	Jul	25	16:38	mpathf_part2	->	/dm-32
lrwxrwxrwx	1	root	root		8	Jul	25	16:38	mpathf_part3	->	/dm-33
lrwxrwxrwx	1	root	root		8	Jul	25	16:38	mpathf_part4	->	/dm-34
lrwxrwxrwx	1	root	root		8	Jul	25	16:38	mpathg_part1	->	/dm-27
lrwxrwxrwx	1	root	root		8	Jul	25	16:38	mpathg_part2	->	/dm-28
lrwxrwxrwx	1	root	root		8	Jul	25	16:38	mpathg_part3	->	/dm-29
lrwxrwxrwx	1	root	root		8	Jul	25	16:38	mpathg_part4	->	/dm-30
lrwxrwxrwx	1	root	root		8	Jul	25	16:38	mpathh ->	/ dm-	-10
lrwxrwxrwx	1	root	root		8	Jul	25	16:38	mpathh_part1	->	/dm-35
lrwxrwxrwx	1	root	root		8	Jul	25	16:38	mpathh_part2	->	/dm-36
lrwxrwxrwx	1	root	root		8	Jul	25	16:38	mpathh_part3	->	/dm-37
lrwxrwxrwx	1	root	root		8	Jul	25	16:38	mpathh_part4	->	/dm-38

If the output of the multipath entries looks similar to the above (only showing part of the configured entries), please issue the following two commands to restore all the multipathing entries.

multipath -F multipath

# Chapter 3. Chapter 3 x86-64 (Intel or AMD) Blades Running Windows Host Attachment

This section describes how to attach an Intel or Advanced Micro Devices (AMD) host blade running the Windows operating system to a SAS RAID Controller Module using SAS adapters.

This chapter includes the following sections:

- "Updating the Driver for a SAS HBA on x86-64 (Intel or AMD) Host Running Windows"
- "Updating the Firmware and BIOS on a SAS Expansion Card on x86-64 (Intel or AMD) Host Running Windows" on page 57
- For configuration of the SAS HBA BIOS, refer to Appendix A, "Appendix A: Configuring a SAS HBA BIOS on x86-64 (Intel or AMD) host," on page 147
- "Configuring the SAS HBA Driver on x86-64 (Intel or AMD) Host Running Windows" on page 61
- "Configuring SDD DSM on x86-64 (Intel or AMD) Host Running Windows" on page 62
- "Configuration for SAS Booting on x86-64 (Intel or AMD) Host Running Windows" on page 64
- "System Configuration Settings for use with Microsoft Windows Clustering" on page 67
- "Modification of Windows Performance settings" on page 80

## Updating the Driver for a SAS HBA on x86-64 (Intel or AMD) Host Running Windows

This section describes how to update the driver for a SAS HBA on x86-64 (Intel or AMD) host blade that is running the Windows operating system. The following is an outline of the steps that will be performed during this section.

#### About this task

- Download the applicable firmware file from the support and downloads website. It is recommended that you download it to the host desktop.
- Follow the README instructions for installation.
- After installation you will be prompted to reboot to complete the driver installation. When the host has rebooted you can check the driver level by entering the Device Manager view from the Management option for the host.

**Note:** The following versions listed are only examples, the current version available may be at a later version than shown.

#### Procedure

 Download the applicable firmware file from the support and downloads website. It is recommended that you download it to the host desktop. Download the file from the following URL http://www.ibm.com/systems/ support/supportsite.wss/brandmain?brandind=5000020

Select Product Family, then select 'Go'

Select your product	
Fields marked with an asterisk (*) are required.	
Product family: *	
Select a product family	~
Type:	
All	×
Model:	
All	. M.
Operating system:	
All listed operating systems	÷
Note: Not all operating systems listed are supp platforms. Check <u>ServerProven</u> for compatibility	orted on all hardware

Figure 42. Example of Product Family Search

Select the SAS Expansion card firmware update listed.

2. Unzip the file and copy the .exe file onto the desktop.



Figure 43. Example firmware file

- **3**. Double click on the .exe file to begin the code load.
- 4. Select Perform Update and click on the Next button.

Package Tupe	IBM and LSI Basic or Integrated BAID SAS
r denoge rype	Controller Driver for Windows
Package Version	1.29.03.00
Actions Perform Update	

Figure 44. Select Perform Update

5. Click on the Update button.



Figure 45. Click Update

6. Click on the Exit button.



Figure 46. Click on the Exit button

- 7. Reboot the blade.
- 8. To verify the level right click on My Computer and select Manage. In the left pane of the Manage screen click on Device manager. In the right pane click the (+) sign next to 'SCSI and RAID controllers,' (in Windows Server 2008/2012 it is called 'Storage Controllers,') to display the controllers on your system. Right click on the controller and select Properties.



Figure 47. To verify the level right

**9**. In the properties screen select the Driver tab. The driver level should be listed as 1.29.3.0 as seen below.

LSI Adapt	er, SAS 3000 ser	ies, 4-port with 1064 -StorPort Prop ? 🗙
General	Driver Details	Resources
¢	LSI Adapter, SAS -StorPort	3000 series, 4-port with 1064
	Driver Provider:	LSI Corporation
	Driver Date:	10/14/2008
	Driver Version:	1.29.3.0
	Digital Signer:	Microsoft Windows Hardware Compatibility Publ

Figure 48. Example of the Windows driver version

**Note:** This is an example of driver version 1.29.3.0 and may not reflect the most current version supported.

# Updating the Firmware and BIOS on a SAS Expansion Card on x86-64 (Intel or AMD) Host Running Windows

This section describes how to update the firmware and BIOS for a SAS Expansion Card on x86-64 (Intel or AMD) host blade that is running the Windows operating system.

#### About this task

- Download the applicable BIOS and Firmware Update for the SAS Expansion Card (CFFv) for IBM BladeCenter exe file from the support and downloads website. It is recommended that you download the file to the host desktop for easy access.
- Follow the README instructions for installation contained on the support page.
- After installation you will be prompted to reboot the host. As the host reboots you will see the new BIOS and Firmware levels.

**Important:** If installing version 2.71, or later, and coming from an earlier version on an HS22 blade, refer to Appendix C, "Appendix C: Procedure for MPTSAS FW upgrade of HS12, HS21-XM, HS21, HS22, HS22V, HX5 and LS20 blades," on page 161

**Note:** The following versions listed are only examples, the current version available may be at a later version than shown.

#### Procedure

- Download the applicable firmware file from the support and downloads website. It is recommended that you download it to the host desktop. Download the file from the following URL: http://www.ibm.com/systems/ support/supportsite.wss/brandmain?brandind=5000020
  - a. Select Product Family, then select 'Go'

~
~
~
~

Figure 49. Example of Product Family Search

- b. Select the SAS HBA card driver update listed.
- c. Save the appropriate .zip file onto your laptop and extract (unzip) it.
- d. After unzipping there will be three files enclosed.

	ibm	fw	mptsas	bc-sasexp-2.62	windows	32-64.chg
E	ibm	fw	mptsas	bc-sasexp-2.62	windows	_32-64.exe
0	ibm_	fw	mptsas	bc-sasexp-2.62	windows	_32-64.txt

Figure 50. Enclosed three files

e. Copy the file ibm\_fw\_mptsas\_bc-sasexp-2.62\_windows\_32-64.exe onto the desktop of the Windows blade desktop.



Figure 51. ibm\_fw\_mptsas\_bc-sasexp-2.62\_windows\_32-64.exe

- 2. From the Windows blade desktop double click on the ibm\_fw\_mptsas\_ bc-sasexp-2.62\_windows\_32-64.exe file to initiate the code load.
- 3. Select Perform Update and click on the Next button.

Package Type	BIOS and Firmware Update for the SAS Expansion Card (CFFv) for IBM BladeCenter
Package Version	2.62
Package Build Level	NA
Actions Perform Update	
C Extract to Flopp	у
O Extract to Hard	Drive

Figure 52. Select Perform Update

4. Click on the Update button.

Success	
BIOS and Firmware Update for the SAS Expansion Card (CFFv) for IBM BladeCenter update	
Attempting to flash controller 11	18
Updating firmware on Controller 1. Please wait Update of controller 1 firmware completed successfully.	
Updating BIOS on Controller 1. Please wait Update of controller 1 BIOS completed successfully.	
Updating FCODE on Controller 1. Please wait Update of controller 1 FCODE completed successfully.	
You must reboot your system to complete the firmware update process. You do not need to reboot your system immediately.	
Readme KBack Exit Conver	1

Figure 53. Example of screen output during firmware update

- 5. Click on the Exit button and reboot the blade.
- 6. As the host comes back up verify that it reflects the new level of SAS HBA firmware 1.27.82.00 as seen at the bottom of the screen shot below.

LSI Corporation MPT SAS BIOS MPTBIOS-6.26.00.00 (2008.10.14) Copyright 2000-2008 LSI Corporation.						
Searching for devices at HBA 0 SLOT ID LUN VENDOR PRODUCT	REVISION INT13 SIZE \ NU					
1 LSILogic SAS1064-IR	1.27.82.00 NV 2D:08					
LSI Corporation MPT boot ROM, no sup	pported devices found!					



**Note:** This is an example of BIOS version 6.26.00 and FW 1.27.82 and may not reflect the most current revision supported.

# Configuring the SAS HBA Driver on x86-64 (Intel or AMD) Host Running Windows

The following section describes how to perform required changes to the SAS driver settings when using x86-64 (Intel or AMD) host running Windows.

## **Changing Queue Depth for Microsoft Windows**

To edit the queue depth settings for host blades running the Microsoft Windows operating system, perform the following steps.

### About this task

#### Note:

- The actual value used depending on the number of LUNs mapping to the host. See "Serial Attached SCSI host attachment" on page 12for more information on how to calculate the correct settings, and then back to this section.
- The SAS HBA driver level needs to be verified with different parameter and route settings for changing the queue depth. To verify the driver level, see "Updating the Driver for a SAS HBA on x86-64 (Intel or AMD) Host Running Windows" on page 51 for more information. Check the Properties screen of "SCSI and RAID controllers" (or "Storage Controllers" in Windows Server 2008/2012) in Device manager. The driver level should be listed in the Driver tab.

#### Procedure

- Start the registry editor command by entering the following command from the Windows command prompt. regedit
- 2. Save a backup copy of the current registry before making any changes, by selecting the highest level key and then selecting File -> Export.
- **3**. Navigate to the following key:

```
For driver of LSI_SAS,
Computer\HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Services\LSI_SAS\Parameters\Device
For driver of LSI_SAS2,
Computer\HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Services\LSI_SAS2\Parameters\Device,
```

- 4. Right-click DriverParameter and select Modify from the menu.
- 5. Add the parameter of the SAS registry entry.
  - a. LSI\_SAS with driver version 1.33.01 (or later); LSI\_SAS2 with driver version 2.00.29 (or later).

Add **MaxSASQueueDepth=4** (default 64) after the last entry. Update the value if the entry already exists.

The number is decided by the number of LUNs assigned to the host. Ex: MaxSASQueueDepth = 4 while setting 16 LUNs to the host.

b. LSI\_SAS with driver version prior to version 1.33.01; LSI\_SAS2 with driver version prior to version 2.00.29.

Add **MaximumTargetQueueDepth=4** after the last entry. Update the value if the entry already exists.

**Important:** Make sure to update the value in the registry entry above. See "Serial Attached SCSI host attachment" on page 12 for more information on how to calculate the correct settings.

Registry Editor			
File Edit View Favorites Help			
Device	▲ Name	Туре	Data
PhpInterface	(Default)	REG_SZ	(value not set)
51	ab DriverParameter	REG_SZ	PlaceHolder=0;MaximumTargetQueueDepth=1;
as			
2			
1			
-			
ss			
par			
5×			
2			
510			
520			
Bridge 3.0.0.0			
~			
I			
ver	_		
-1	الغري		
<u>1</u>			
Computer\HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\S\	/STEM\CurrentControlSet\Servi	ces\LSI_SAS\Param	eters\Device

Figure 55. Example Registry Settings Screen for Windows

- 6. Save changes and exit the registry editor.
- 7. Reboot the host blade for the changes to be applied.

## Configuring SDD DSM on x86-64 (Intel or AMD) Host Running Windows

This section describes how to configure SDD DSM on x86-64 (Intel or AMD) host blade that is running the Windows operating system.

#### Important:

- The previous version of SDD must be un-installed prior to installing the updated version. If there is no previous version of SDD, then skip the SDD uninstall instructions.
- If the host is SAS Booted and is operating with 2 SAS RAID Controller Modules, then one of the controllers will need to be turned off prior to uninstalling SDD. This can be accomplished by using the AMM to power off the controller or use SCM or the CLI to shutdown the controller to service mode. The system will failover and the remaining controller will go into SURVIVOR state.
- SDD DSM requires a minimum of Windows Server 2003 SP2
- There are Microsoft Hotfixes that must be installed on Windows Server 2003 and 2008 prior to installing SDD. Those Hotfixes are as follows:
  - For Windows Server 2003 with SP2
    - KB941276: A Windows Server 2003-based computer stops responding when the system is under a heavy load and when the Storport driver is used
      - http://support.microsoft.com/kb/941276
    - KB934739: The Plug and Play subsystem may not detect an external storage device when it is reconnected in Windows Server 2003
      - http://support.microsoft.com/kb/934739
  - For Windows Server 2008/2012 32 bit version only

- KB967349: Access to an MPIO-controlled storage device fails on a Windows Server 2008 based computer after you disconnect and then reconnect all data cables
  - http://support.microsoft.com/kb/967349

#### To uninstall the previous version of SDD

- If the host is SAS booted please see the important note above regarding the extra steps to take before uninstalling the SDD driver.
- To uninstall the existing SDD code, go to the Add/Remove Programs section of the host Control Panel. Select Subsystem Device Driver DSM and click on the Change/Remove option. After uninstalling the host will need to be rebooted.

#### To install the latest version of SDD

- Download the latest applicable version of SDD from the support and download website. It is recommended that you download the driver to the desktop for easy access.
- · Follow the README instructions located on the web at the following URL

http://www.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?rs=540&context=ST52G7 &dc=D430&uid=ssg1S4000350

• After driver installation the host will need to be rebooted

**Note:** If you are running a SAS booted host in a dual controller chassis you can turn on the controller that was previously turned off prior to the update after the host reboots. You may need to rescan the disks or reboot the host again after the second controller becomes bound to ensure all paths to the storage are restore.

• After the host has rebooted you can check the SDD version by entering the command prompt in the Subsystem Device Driver DSM programs list and typing the following:

datapath query version

🖦 Administrator: Subsystem Device Driver DSM					
Microsoft Windows [Version 6.0.6002] Copyright (c) 2006 Microsoft Corporation.	All rights reserved.				
C:\Program Files\IBM\SDDDSM>datapath query IBM SDDDSM Version 2.4.2.1-2 Microsoft MPIO Version 6.0.6001.18000	version				

Figure 56. Example of datapath query version command

**Note:** This is an example of SDDDSM version 2.4.2.1-2 and may not reflect the most current revision supported.

## Configuration for SAS Booting on x86-64 (Intel or AMD) Host Running Windows

This section describes how to configure x86-64 (Intel or AMD) host blade that is running the Windows operating system for SAS booting.

Refer to Appendix B, "Appendix B: SAS Boot Pre-Operating System Installation Activities," on page 157, to validate that the system is ready to install a SAS booted operating system.

### Operating system installation

Use the applicable procedures and instructions that are provided with the Windows operating system software to configure the operating system on the boot volume that is mapped to the blade server. It is not the intention of this document to show how to install the operating system or to select which software applications that will be installed or required for the initial installation of the operating system.

Depending on the operating system version, you might have to provide the SAS expansion card device driver during the installation so that the operating system can recognize the mapped boot volume from the IBM BladeCenter S SAS RAID Controller Module. Follow the appropriate instructions for your operating system to specify the use of a SAS adapter device driver that is not included in the operating system image.

**Note:** When installing the Windows operating system, knowledge of the recovery console using the installation CD and editing the boot entry on-the-fly will be useful. Incorrect modifications to enable multipath might result in failure to boot into the Windows image.

### Post-Operating system installation activities

Perform the following steps to complete the installation of Microsoft Windows operating system on the IBM BladeCenter S SAS RAID Controller Module boot volume.

#### About this task

**Important:** After completing any section outside this section, return to this section of the document to complete any remaining steps.

Perform the following Steps:

#### Procedure

- 1. Update the SAS device driver as detailed in the section titled "Updating the Driver for a SAS HBA on x86-64 (Intel or AMD) Host Running Windows" on page 51.
- Update the host based settings as detailed in the section titled "Configuring the SAS HBA Driver on x86-64 (Intel or AMD) Host Running Windows" on page 61.
- 3. Install the System Storage Multipath Windows Subsystem Device Driver Device Specific Module (SDDDSM) as detailed in the section titled "Configuring SDD DSM on x86-64 (Intel or AMD) Host Running Windows" on page 62.

- 4. Use the SCM client or the CLI interface to map the boot volume to the second SAS port in the blade server. Create additional volumes and mapped them to both SAS ports.
- 5. Reboot the server. Log into the blade server and start the Subsystem Device Driver DSM command prompt window by selecting Start -> All Programs -> Subsystem Device Driver DSM -> Subsystem Device Driver DSM. When the "Select Subsystem Device Driver" command prompt window is displayed, type "datapath query adapter." You should see 2 paths & 2 active paths for each volume (LUN) that is mapped to the blade server. In the example below, a host, with 1 volume (LUN) mapped to both SAS ports, shows 2 paths of which all are active in the SDD command prompt window. The datapath query device and datapath query version can be used to provide more information on the paths per device and SDD DSM version.

ex. Adminis	strator: Subsystem Device Driver DSM	6.			
Microsof Copyrig}	t Windows [Version 6.0.6001] ht (c) 2006 Microsoft Corporation.	A11 r	ights rese	rved.	<u> </u>
C:\Progr	am Files\IBM\SDDDSM>datapath query	y devic	e		
Total De	evices : 1				
DEV#: SERIAL:	0 DEVICE NAME: Disk0 Part0 TYPE 600507680740D57F000000000000000	: 1820N	00 POLI	CY: OPTIMIZ	ZED
Path#	Adapter/Hard Disk	State	Mode	Select	Errors 24452
1	Scsi Port2 Bus0/Disk0 Part0 Scsi Port2 Bus0/Disk0 Part0	OPEN	NORMAL	821	10930
C:\Progr IBM SDDI Microsof	am Files\IBM\SDDDSM>datapath quer: SM Version 2.4.0.0-7 t MPIO Version 6.0.6001.18000	y versi	on		
C:\Progr	am Files\IBM\SDDDSM>_				
					-

Figure 57. Subsystem device driver DSM command prompt window – datapath query device/version

6. In the Disk Drives folder of the Microsoft Device Manager window of the Microsoft Windows Server 2008/2012 hosts, there should be one 1820N00 Multi-Path for each of the volumes that are mapped to the blade server from the SAS RAID Controller Module. The Windows Server 2008/2012 Device Manager does NOT display the 1820N00 SCSI disk device entries. To review the 1820N00 SCSI disk device entries that the blade server see, use the Microsoft Windows registry editor and look at the content of the \HKEY\_LOCAL\_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Services\disk\ Enum key. There should be two 1820N00 SCSI disk devices entries for each volume that is mapped to the blade server (See An example of \HKLMACHINE \SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Services\disk\Enum key figure).



Figure 58. Computer Management window showing SAS RAID Controller Module volumes in Windows Server 2008/2012 hosts

🕼 Registry E	Editor	<u></u>		- 10		8
File Edit Vie	ew Favori	ites Help				
	÷	👌 DcomLaunch 🔺	Name	Туре	Data	
	÷	Dfs	ab (Default)	REG_SZ	(value not set)	
		DfsC	abo	REG_SZ	SCSI\Disk&Ven_IBM&Prod_1820N00\6&6bc639a&0&00000	
	±	DfsDriver	ab 1	REG_SZ	SCSI\Disk&Ven_IBM&Prod_1820N00\6&6bc639a&0&000100	
	<b>.</b>	DFSR	ab 2	REG_SZ	SCSI\Disk&Ven_IBM-ESXS&Prod_ST973401SS\5&2cc37e1d&0&	
	±	Dhcp	ab 3	REG_SZ	MPIO\Disk&Ven_IBM&Prod_1820N00&Rev_1681\1&7f6ac24&0	
	<b>.</b>	DirectorySer	Count	REG_DWORD	0x00000004 (4)	
	=	disk	18 NextInstance	REG DWORD	0x00000004 (4)	
	1			0750	-52	
	<b>H</b>	DNS				
		det?aus				
	±	DDC				
	E C	DYGKml				
		E1G60				
	+	EanHost				
	L	elxstor				
		ErrDev				
	+	ESENT				
		EventLog				-
	÷	EventSyster				
		exfat				
	÷	astfat N				
	<b>.</b>	FCRegSvc				
		o fdc				
	±	fdPHost				
	(F)	FDResPub	1			
one					🕘 Internet 🔍 100%	-

Figure 59. An example of \HKLMACHINE \SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Services\disk\Enum key

7. In the Disk Drives folder of the Microsoft Device Manager window of the Microsoft Windows Server 2003 hosts, there should be one 1820N00 Multi-Path

and two IBM 1820N00 SCSI disk device entries (one per volume path) for each of the volumes that is mapped to the blade server from the SAS RAID Controller Module.



Figure 60. Computer Management window showing SAS RAID Controller Module volumes in Windows Server 2003 hosts

8. Install the latest Windows operating system updates and other hot-fixes as required.

## System Configuration Settings for use with Microsoft Windows Clustering

This section describes the steps to configure the SAS Expansion Card (CFFv) for IBM BladeCenter and the SAS Connectivity Card (CIOv) for IBM BladeCenter to support blades that are configured for Microsoft Cluster Service. It also includes the settings changes for the Ethernet switch in the BladeCenter S chassis, and additional Windows host system settings.

## **Configuring SAS HBA BIOS Settings**

If you are configuring a server blade as a node in a Microsoft Windows Server 2003 clustering environment, you need to configure the SAS Expansion Card or the Onboard SAS Controller (for configurations with the SAS Connectivity Card) BIOS to support Microsoft Cluster Service. If the SAS Expansion Card and the Onboard SAS Controller BIOS configuration is not set, nodes added to the cluster may fail to boot or hang with the console output as shown in the following figure.



Figure 61. Example of a hung boot screen

Figure 44: Example of a hung boot screen

**Important:** For blades that have the SAS Expansion Card or a boot disk connected through the SAS Expansion Card, you must apply Microsoft Hotfix 886569 for Microsoft Cluster Service to be able to manage the storage volumes. You can download Microsoft Hotfix 886569 at http://support.microsoft.com/kb/886569. The steps you need to perform to configure the SAS Expansion Card and the Onboard SAS Controller BIOS depend on your boot disk type and external adapter type. Determine which steps you need to follow based on the boot option and the type of external SAS interface card you have installed:

- "Configuring blades with an internal boot disk and SAS Expansion Card" on page 69
- "Configuring blades with a boot disk connected through the SAS Expansion Card" on page 72
- "Configuring blades with the SAS Connectivity Card" on page 75

## Configuring blades with an internal boot disk and SAS Expansion Card

Follow these steps when the SAS RAID Module is configured so that only data drives are presented to the blade host, and the host blade uses separate adapters for the internal boot drive and the SAS RAID Module data drives.

#### Procedure

 When the <--Press Ctrl-C to start LSI Logic Configuration Utility>>> prompt displays during system boot, press Ctrl+C to enter the LSI Logic Configuration Utility. For blades with an enabled Onboard SAS Controller and the SAS Expansion Card, the Adapter List screen will be similar to the figure below. In this figure, the SAS Expansion Card is shown as the first entry SAS3020XD. The adapter name may vary depending on the particular blade model and SAS Expansion Card version. To determine which entry is the SAS Expansion Card, you can temporarily disable the Onboard SAS Controller by pressing F1 during the boot; this removes the Onboard SAS Expansion Card. HS20 and LS20 blade types will have a single SAS entry by default as the internal hard drive is connected using SCSI.



Figure 62. Adapter List screen showing Onboard SAS Controller and SAS Expansion Card

 Use the arrow keys to select the SAS Expansion Card then press Enter to display the Adapter Properties screen. Ensure that **Boot Support** is set to [**Disabled**], as shown in the following figure. When boot support is disabled, the LSI Adapter BIOS will not scan the data drives for boot devices.

LSI Corp Config Utility v6.20.00.00 Adapter Properties SAS1064	(2007.12.04)
Adapter PCI Slot PCI Address(Bus/Dev/Func) MPT Firmware Revision SAS Address NVDATA Version Status Boot Order Boot Support RAID Properties SAS Topology Advanced Adapter Properties	SAS1064 01 05:01:00 1.24.81.00-IR 500062B0:000CC828 2D.04 Enabled 0 <b>CDisabled</b> ]
Esc = Exit Menu F1/Shift+1 = Help Enter = Select Item -/+/Enter = Change	Item

Figure 63. Disabling boot support for the SAS Expansion Card

**3**. Press Esc to exit the Adapter Properties screen until the utility asks you to save the configuration as shown in the following figure for the SAS Expansion Card. Use the arrow keys to select Save changes then exit this menu, then press Enter. Back on the Adapter List screen, the **Status** of the external adapter now displays as **[Disabled]**.



Figure 64. Saving configuration changes for the SAS Expansion Card

4. Change the boot order so that the Onboard SAS Controller is boot device 0. Use the arrow keys to select the Boot Order fields, then press Insert and Delete to change the boot order so that the Onboard SAS Controller is set to 0. The

following figure shows the correct boot order.

LSI Corp Config Uti Adapter List <b>Globa</b>	lity ( I Propertie	v6.22.00.00 es	(2008.04.10)		
Adapter	PCI PCI Bus Dev	PCI PCI Fnc Slot	FW Revision	Status	Boot Order
SAS3020XD SAS1064	05 01 02 00	00 01 00 00	1.24.81.00-IR 1.26.84.00-IR	Disabled Enabled	0
Esc = Exit Menu Alt+N = Global Prop	F1/Shift erties -/+	t+1 = Help = Alter Bo	ot Order Inszl	)el = Alter	Boot List

Figure 65. Setting boot order to 0 for Onboard SAS Controller

5. Press Esc to exit the Adapter List screen. Use the arrow keys to select Exit the Configuration Utility and Reboot, then press Enter. Figure



Figure 66. Saving the BIOS setting and rebooting

The blade now boots from the internal disk and will not scan the external drives during the boot. The first boot device is the Onboard SAS Controller.

## Configuring blades with a boot disk connected through the SAS Expansion Card

Follow these steps when the SAS RAID Module is configured to boot the host blade, and also for data drives.

#### About this task

**Note:** The boot drive must be mapped to LUN0, and the data drive mapping can be any drive starting at LUN1. The boot drive must not be shared with other hosts blades on the SAS RAID Module.

#### Procedure

1. During the blade boot, press F1 to disable the Planar SAS Controller. The Devices and I/O Ports screen displays.

Devices and I	/U Ports
Serial Port A	[ Auto-configure ]
Serial Port B ■ Remote Console Redirection	[ Disabled ]
Mouse	[ Installed ]
Planar Ethernet Both PORTs	[ Enabled ]
<b>Planar SAS</b> Daughter Card Slot 1	[ Disabled ] [ Enabled ]
High Precision Event Timer (	HPET) [ Disabled ]
= Video = IDE Configuration Menu = System MAC Addresses	

Figure 67. Devices and I/O Ports screen

- 2. Press Esc to exit the Devices and I/O Ports screen.
- 3. When the <<<Press Ctrl-C to start LSI Logic Configuration Utility>>> prompt displays during system boot, press Ctrl+C to enter the LSI Logic Configuration Utility. The Adapter List screen displays, similar to below figure. Adapter List screen showing SAS Expansion Card.

LSI Corp Config Uti	lity I Propert	v6.26	.00.00	(2008.10	.14)			
Adapter	PCI PCI Bus Dev	PCI Fnc	PCI Slot	FW Revis	ion	Status	Boot Order	
SAS3828XD	08 01	00	01	1.27.82.6	30-IR	Enabled	0	
	74.01							ve
Alt+N = Global Prop	r1/Shi -/ erties	:tt+1 = '+ = Al	Help ter Bo	ot Order	Ins/De l	= Alter	Boot L	ist

Figure 68. Adapter List screen showing SAS Expansion Card

4. Use the arrow keys to select the external SAS adapter then press Enter to display the Adapter Properties screen. Ensure that **Boot Support** is set to **[Enabled BIOS & OS]**.

LSI Corp Config Utility v6.20.00.00 Adapter Properties SAS1064	(2007.12.04)
Adapter PCI Slot PCI Address(Bus/Dev/Func) MPT Firmware Revision SAS Address NVDATA Version Status Boot Order Boot Support RAID Properties SAS Topology Advanced Adapter Properties	SAS1064 01 05:01:00 1.24.81.00-IR 500062B0:000CC828 2D.04 Enabled 0 CEmabled BIOS & OSJ
Esc = Exit Menu F1/Shift+1 = Help Enter = Select Item -/+/Enter = Change	Iten

Figure 69. Adapter Properties screen showing enabled BIOS and OS boot support

5. Use the arrow keys to select Advanced Adapter Properties, then press Enter. The Advanced Adapter Properties screen displays as shown in the following figure.

LSI Corp Config Utility Advanced Adapter Proper	v6.20.00.00 ties SAS1064	(2007.12.04)
IRO	1	1A
NUM		les
IO Port Addre	ss	1000
Chip Revision	ID	13
Advanced Adap	ter Properties	
Adapter Timin	g Properties	
PHY Propertie	S	
Esc = Exit Menu F	1/Shift+1 = Help	
Enter = Select Item -	/+/Enter = Change	Iten

Figure 70. Advanced Adapter Properties screen

6. Use the arrow keys to select Advanced Device Properties, then press Enter. The Advanced Device Properties screen displays as shown in the following figure.

LSI Corp Config Utility v6.20.00.00 (2007.12.04 Advanced Device Properties SAS1064	)			
Maximum INT 13 Devices for this Adapter	24			
IO Timeout for Block Devices IO Timeout for Block Devices(Removable) IO Timeout for Sequential Devices IO Timeout for Other Devices	10 10 10 10			
LUNs to Scan for Block Devices LUNs to Scan for Block Devices(Removable) LUNs to Scan for Sequential Devices LUNs to Scan for Other Devices	[Lun 0 Only] [All] [All] [All] [All]			
Removable Media Support	[None]			
Restore Defaults				
Esc = Exit Menu F1/Shift+1 = Help Enter = Select Item -/+/Enter = Change Item				

Figure 71. Advanced Device Properties screen

- 7. Use the arrow keys to navigate to LUNs to Scan for Block Devices and set it to [Lun 0 Only].
- 8. Press Esc to exit the Adapter Properties screen until the utility asks you to save the configuration as shown in Figure: Saving configuration changes for the SAS Expansion Card. Use the arrow keys to select Save changes then exit this menu, then press Enter.
- **9**. Press Esc to exit the Adapter List screen. Use the arrow keys to select Exit the Configuration Utility and Reboot, then press Enter.
- 10. Exit the BIOS as shown in Saving the BIOS setting and rebooting figure.

#### Configuring blades with the SAS Connectivity Card

Follow these steps for blades that have the SAS Connectivity Card instead of an SAS Expansion Card. For configurations with the SAS Connectivity Card, the internal hard drive and external drives are on the same storage bus. To configure the blade to operate the SAS Connectivity Card, the Onboard SAS Controller BIOS must be set to scan LUN0 only during the boot and the external drives must be mapped with numbers higher then 0.

#### About this task

**Note:** If you map drives to the host through the SAS RAID Controller Module command line interface, you must start the drive mapping with LUN1 or higher. If you start the drive mapping at LUN0, a boot delay will occur.

For blades that have the SAS Connectivity Card and are configured to be booted from an external SAS drive, the internal hard drive must be removed. Except for the requirements to remove the internal disk and to map a boot volume to the blade, the configuration for internal hard drive boot and external SAS boot is identical.

#### Procedure

When the <<<Press Ctrl-C to start LSI Logic Configuration Utility>>>
prompt displays during system boot, press Ctrl+C to enter the LSI Logic
Configuration Utility. The Adapter List screen displays, similar to below figure.



Figure 72. Adapter List screen showing the Onboard SAS Controller

**2.** Use the arrow keys to select the Onboard SAS Controller then press Enter to display the Adapter Properties screen.

LSI Corp Config Utility v6.26.00.00 Adapter Properties SAS1064E	(2008.10.14)
Adapter PCI Slot PCI Address(Bus/Dev) MPT Firmware Revision SAS Address NVDATA Version Status Boot Order Boot Support RAID Properties SAS Topology Advanced Adapter Properties	SAS1064 00 0B:00 1.27.83.00-IR 5005076B:08801C2E 2D.12 Enabled 0 [Enabled BIOS & OS]
Esc = Exit Menu F1/Shift+1 = Help Enter = Select Item -/+/Enter = Change	Item

Figure 73. Adapter Properties screen for the Onboard SAS Controller

- 3. Ensure that Boot Support is set to [Enabled BIOS & OS].
- 4. Use the arrow keys to select Advanced Adapter Properties, then press Enter. The Advanced Adapter Properties screen displays as shown in below figure.

LSI Corp Config Utili Advanced Adapter Prop	ty v6.26.00.00 Derties SAS1064E	(2008.10.14)
IRQ NVM IO Port Add Chip Revisi	lress on ID	0B Yes 1000 08
Advanced Do Adapter Tin PHY Propert	vice Properties ning Properties ties	
Esc = Exit Menu Enter = Select Item	F1/Shift+1 = Help -/+/Enter = Change	: Item

Figure 74. Advanced Adapter Properties screen

5. Use the arrow keys to select **Advanced Device Properties**, then press Enter. The Advanced Device Properties screen displays as shown in below figure.



Figure 75. Advanced Device Properties screen

- 6. Use the arrow keys to navigate to LUNs to Scan for Block Devices and set it to [Lun 0 Only].
- 7. Press Esc to exit the Adapter Properties screen until the utility asks you to save the configuration as shown in below figure.



Figure 76. Saving configuration changes for the Onboard SAS Controller

- 8. Use the arrow keys to select Save changes then exit this menu, then press Enter. The Adapter List screen displays again.
- **9**. Press Esc to exit the Adapter List screen. Use the arrow keys to select Exit the Configuration Utility and Reboot, then press Enter as shown in Saving the BIOS setting and rebooting figure.

## **Disabling IGMP snooping**

Internet Group Management Protocol (IGMP) snooping is the process of listening to IGMP network traffic. In a cluster configuration, you should disable IGMP snooping to prevent node failover issues. Any Ethernet switch module that support this function, should verify that the function is disabled. Perform the following steps to disable IGMP snooping.

**Note:** The following example uses the Server Connectivity Module for IBM BladeCenter (39Y9324). Other Ethernet switch modules that support this feature may require a separate procedure. Refer to the Ethernet switch module configuration documentation for specific procedures.

#### **Disabling IGMP snooping through Telnet**

This section demonstrates how to disable IGMP snooping through Telnet.

#### Procedure

- 1. Log into the Advanced Management Module:
  - a. Enter the IP address of the Advanced Management Module into the Web browser URL field. If you have the Advanced Management Module connected to your network, log in using the network IP assigned to it. If you are using the default IP address your management system (the computer you are using to manage your IBM BladeCenter S components) must be physically connected through an Ethernet cable to the Advanced Management Module.

**Note:** The default IP address for the Advanced Management Module is 192.168.70.125.

b. Enter the username and password.

- The default username is: USERID
- The default password is: PASSW0RD (the sixth position is the numeral zero)
- c. When prompted for the Inactive session timeout value, select no timeout.

**Note:** Remember to log out when you have completed your session. If you do not log out, the system shows an error the next time you try to log in.

- 2. From the I/O Module Tasks Configuration menu, select the Ethernet module and choose Advanced Configuration.
- 3. Select Start Telnet Session.
- 4. Type cfg and press Enter to open the configuration menu.
- 5. Type group and press Enter to open the group menu.
- 6. Select the appropriate group number at the prompt.
- 7. Type igmp at the selected group menu to change the IGMP setting. >> Group 1# igmp Current Enable/Disable IGMP snooping on current group: enabled Enter new Enable/Disable IGMP snooping on current group [d/e]:
- 8. Press d to disable IGMP snooping.

#### Disabling IGMP snooping through a web session

This section demonstrates how to disable IGMP snooping through a web session.

#### Procedure

- 1. Log into the Advanced Management Module:
  - a. Enter the IP address of the Advanced Management Module into the Web browser URL field. If you have the Advanced Management Module connected to your network, log in using the network IP assigned to it. If you are using the default IP address your management system (the computer you are using to manage your IBM BladeCenter S components) must be physically connected through an Ethernet cable to the Advanced Management Module.

**Note:** The default IP address for the Advanced Management Module is 192.168.70.125.

- b. Enter the username and password.
  - The default username is: USERID
  - The default password is: PASSW0RD (the sixth position is the numeral zero)
- c. When prompted for the Inactive session timeout value, select no timeout.

**Note:** Remember to log out when you have completed your session. If you do not log out, the system shows an error the next time you try to log in.

- 2. From the I/O Module Tasks Configuration menu, select the Ethernet module from the Advanced Management Module and select Advanced Configuration.
- 3. Select Start Web Session.
- 4. From the navigation panel, select Miscellaneous settings → Uplink/Group.
- 5. For IGMP settings, select Disable from the list of options.

## **Private Network Setup**

When creating your cluster environment, it is required to have at least two networks, a public network and private network. Cluster validation may still pass with only a public network enabled. However, one may encounter problems with live migration.

To set up the private network, enable the second network adapter on your blade/node. Go to **Properties** for this adapter and click on **Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)** and then click on the **Properties** button. Create a static IP address and subnet for the node that is a different range than the public network, for example a 10.x.x.x and 255.0.0.0. Repeat for all nodes in your cluster.

## **Modification of Windows Performance settings**

The following section describes how to modify the Windows drive performance settings to obtain the optimal performance when using the SAS RAID Controller Module.

Many RAID controllers implement write caching and ignore the settings in the OS. The IBM BladeCenter S SAS RAID Controller Module honors the selections within the OS and applies those settings to the drive arrays. The SAS RAID Controller Module depends upon proper OS configuration to enable/disable performance and write caching.

#### How to make the policy changes

This section describes how to make the policy changes.

#### Procedure

- 1. Right-click on My Computer.
- 2. Choose "Manage".
- 3. Click on "Disk Management".
- 4. Right-click "Disk X".
- 5. Select Properties.



Figure 77. Computer Management / Disk Management Window

- 6. Click on the Policies Tab.
- 7. For Windows Server 2003, make sure the following boxes are checked.
  - a. Enable write caching on the disk.
  - b. Enable advanced performance.

C	Optimize for quick removal This setting disables write caching on the disk and in Windows, so you can disconnect this device without using the Safe Removal icon.
e	Optimize for performance
	This setting enables write caching in Windows to improve disk performance. To disconnect this device from the computer, click the Safely Remove Hardware icon in the taskbar notification area.
	Excels with eaching on the disk
	This setting improves disk performance, but a power outage or equipment failure might result in data loss or corruption.
	Enable advanced performance
	Recommended only for disks with a backup power supply. This setting further improves disk performance, but it also increases the risk of data loss if the disk loses power.

Figure 78. Windows Server 2003 Policy window with correct settings

- c. Select OK to apply the settings.
- 8. For Windows Server 2008/2012, make sure the following boxes are checked.
  - **a**. Enable write caching on the device.
  - b. Select "Turn off Windows write-cache buffer flushing on the device".
| M 1820                 | NOO Multi-Path Disk Device Properties  |
|------------------------|--|
| General                | Policies Volumes Driver Details  |
| Write<br>E<br>In<br>de | caching policy<br>nable write caching on the device<br>proves system performance by enabling write caching on the<br>evice, but a power outage or equipment failure might result in data<br>ss or corruption.<br>Turn off Windows write-cache buffer flushing on the device<br>To prevent data loss, do not select this check box unless the<br>device has a separate power supply that allows the device to<br>flush its buffer in case of power failure. |
| More                   | information about write-caching settings   |
|                        |  |
|                        | OK Cancel  |

Figure 79. Windows Server 2008/2012 Policy window with correct settings

- c. Select OK to apply the settings.
- 9. Repeat step 4 8 for each mapped drive.

# Chapter 4. Chapter 4 x86-64 (Intel or AMD) blades running VMware Host Attachment

This chapter describes how you attach an Intel or Advanced Micro Devices (AMD) host blade running the VMware operating system to an IBM BladeCenter S SAS RAID Controller Module using SAS adapters.

Note: VMware maintains a Hardware Compatibility List which is available at:

http://www.vmware.com/resources/compatibility/search.php

This chapter contains the following sections:

- "Updating the Driver for a SAS HBA on x86-64 (Intel or AMD) Host Running VMware"
- "Updating the FW/BIOS on a SAS Expansion Card on x86-64 (Intel or AMD) Host Running VMware" on page 86
- For configuration of the SAS HBA BIOS, refer to Appendix A, "Appendix A: Configuring a SAS HBA BIOS on x86-64 (Intel or AMD) host," on page 147
- "Configuring Host System Settings on x86-64 (Intel or AMD) Host Running VMware" on page 89
- "Configuring Multipath on x86-64 (Intel or AMD) Host Running VMware" on page 93
- "Configuration for SAS Booting on x86-64 (Intel or AMD) Host Running VMware" on page 97

# Updating the Driver for a SAS HBA on x86-64 (Intel or AMD) Host Running VMware

The SAS HBA driver comes packaged in the ESX Server distribution CDs and they are installed as part of the ESX Server installation process. However, if a newer driver is released, below are the steps to install.

- Steps to install driver (rpm patch)
  - 1. Install the driver rpm using the option "rpm -Uhv --force"
  - 2. Run "esxcfg-boot -b"
  - 3. Reboot the system
  - Check the driver version loaded by issuing command cat /proc/mpt/version"
- Installing async drivers on ESXi 4.x and ESX 4.x
  - Please refer to VMware Knowledge Base article 1032936 for instructions http://kb.vmware.com/selfservice/microsites/search.do?language=en\_US &cmd=displayKC&externalId=1032936
  - 2. After the update finished, please refer to VMware Knowledge Base article 1027206 to check the driver version

http://kb.vmware.com/selfservice/microsites/search.do?language=en\_US &cmd=displayKC&externalId=1027206

- Installing async drivers on ESXi 5.x
  - 1. Please refer to VMware Knowledge Base article 2005205 for instructions

http://kb.vmware.com/selfservice/microsites/search.do?language=en\_US &cmd=displayKC&externalId=2005205

2. After the update finished, please refer to VMware Knowledge Base article 1027206 to check the driver version

http://kb.vmware.com/selfservice/microsites/search.do?language=en\_US &cmd=displayKC&externalId=1027206

# Updating the FW/BIOS on a SAS Expansion Card on x86-64 (Intel or AMD) Host Running VMware

This section describes how to update the firmware and BIOS on the SAS Expansion Card on x86-64 (Intel or AMD) host running VMware. A floppy disk drive or a floppy disk image mounted using the AMM Remote Control will be required to perform these steps.

## About this task

**Important:** If installing version 2.71, or later, and coming from an earlier version on an HS22 blade, refer to Appendix C: Procedure for MPTSAS FW upgrade of HS12, HS21-XM, HS21, HS22, HS22V, HX5 and LS20 blades.

**Note:** The following versions listed are only examples; the current version available may be at a later version than shown.

## Procedure

 Download the applicable firmware file from the support and downloads website. It is recommended that you download it to the host desktop. Download the file from the following URL

http://www.ibm.com/systems/support/supportsite.wss/ brandmain?brandind=5000020

Select Product Family, then select 'Go'

-leids marked with an astensk (*) are required.	
Product family: *	
Select a product family	×
Гуре:	
All	~
Model:	
Ali	~
Operating system:	
All listed operating systems	~
Note: Not all operating systems listed are supporte	ed on all hardware

Figure 80. Example of Product Family Search

Select the SAS HBA firmware update.

- 2. Copy the image to a floppy disk or make the image available for remote mounting using the media tray on the AMM.
- **3**. Assign the media tray to the host blade. If using a floppy drive, connect it to the media tray.
- 4. Reboot the host blade server.
- 5. When the blade boots, make sure the blade boots from the floppy disk with the firmware update image. The following screen captures are examples of what should be seen during the floppy disk boot and firmware update.

```
Starting PC DOS...
                                                                          1
IBM RAMDrive version 3.10 virtual disk C:
   Disk size: 8192k
   Sector size: 512 bytes
   Allocation unit: 8 sectors
   Directory entries: 64
oad ing ...
 ******
                                 ×
 SAS Firmware & BIOS Flash Disk
                                 *
                                 ×
ECHO is off
NOTE: This will attempt to flash all 1078/1068/1064
     controllers in your system. You may see some
     warning messages stating that this flash is not
     compatible with all controllers. These are not
     error messages
This update is for the LSI 1064 or LSI 1064e onboard controller
```

Figure 81. Example of SAS HBA firmware floppy disk boot

6. Once the update is complete disconnect the floppy drive and reboot the server.

LSI Corporat MPTBIOS-6.26 Copyright 20	ion MPT SAS BIOS .00.00 (2008.10.14) 00-2008 LSI Corporation.		
Searching fo SLOT ID LUN	r devices at HBA 0 VENDOR PRODUCT	REVISION	INT13 SIZE \ NU
1	LSILogic SAS1064-IR	1.27.82.00	NV 2D:08
LSI Corporat	ion MPT boot ROM, no suppo	rted device:	s found!

Figure 82. Example of SAS HBA BIOS version

**Note:** This is an example of BIOS version 6.26.00 and FW 1.27.82 and may not reflect the most current revision supported.

# Configuring Host System Settings on x86-64 (Intel or AMD) Host Running VMware

The following section describes how to perform required changes to the SAS driver settings when using x86-64 (Intel or AMD) host running VMware.

## **Changing Queue Depth for VMware**

To edit the queue depth settings for host blades running VMware, perform the following steps.

## About this task

## Note:

- Ensure the following steps are performed to correctly configure VMWare for use with the IBM SAS RAID Controller Module.
- For ESXi 5.x and ESX/ESXi 4.x, Queue depth is based on number of LUNS mapped, so in the above case this would assume 8 LUNs mapped. For a total of no more than 64 outstanding commands at one time on the HBA.
- Additional system tuning may be required to reach an optimal configuration of the system. It is recommended that customer wishing to further tune their system contact IBM technical services for additional tuning options and customization.
- For BladeCenter HS23/HS23E with inbox LSI mpt2sas driver: when executing below commands, please change the module name and the associated parameters from mptsas to mpt2sas.

## ESXi 5.x

- 1. Execute esxcli system module parameters list to get module names.
- 2. For mptsas driver, execute:

esxcli system module parameters set -p mpt\_sdev\_queue\_depth=8 -m mptsas For mpt2sas driver, execute:

esxcli system module parameters set -p mpt2sas\_sas\_queue\_depth=8 -m mpt2sas

- 3. Reboot the host blade to take the change effect
- 4. For mptsas driver, execute:.

esxcli system module parameters list -m mptsas to verify the change For mpt2sas driver, execute:

esxcli system module parameters list -m mpt2sas to verify the change

5. For setting of the dynamic queue configuration issue the following commands: esxcfg-advcfg -g /Disk/SchedNumReqOutstanding esxcfg-advcfg -g /Disk/QFullThreshold esxcfg-advcfg -g /Disk/QFullSampleSize

esxcfg-advcfg -g /Disk/DelayOnBusy

The recommended values for these settings are as follows:

SchedNumReqOutstanding, set to the queue depth setting from above

QFullThreshold, set to the queue depth setting from above

QFullSampleSize, set to 64

DelayOnBusy, set to 2000

Use the command esxcfg-advcfg -s <value> cparameter> to change these
settings. These settings are changed dynamically, and do not require a server
reboot.

### Note:

If the queue depth is not set correctly or the system is overly busy due to the IO load, there may be a BUSY response returned for commands. This status will appear in the vmkernel log like the following:
 "vmhba0:C0:T1:L0" H:0x0 D:0x8 P:0x0 Possible sense data: 0x0 0x0 0x0

## ESX/ESXi 4.x

- 1. Execute esxcfg-module -l to get module names (should be mptsas)
- Execute esxcfg-module -s "mpt\_sdev\_queue\_depth=8 mpt\_disable\_hotplug\_remove=1" mptsas
- 3. Execute esxcfg-module -g mptsas to confirm that the settings have been applied
- 4. Execute esxcfg-boot -b to make sure the parameters are setup for boot

**Note:** In ESXi 4.x, there is no need with this command esxcfg-boot –b as it is included in the standard shutdown procedure to get the initrd recreated automatically.

- 5. Reboot the host blade to make for the above settings to take effect.
- 6. For setting of the dynamic queue configuration issue the following commands: esxcfg-advcfg -g /Disk/SchedNumReqOutstanding esxcfg-advcfg -g /Disk/QFullThreshold esxcfg-advcfg -g /Disk/QFullSampleSize esxcfg-advcfg -g /Disk/DelayOnBusy

The recommended values for these settings are as follows:

SchedNumReqOutstanding, set to the queue depth setting from above

QFullThreshold, set to the queue depth setting from above

QFullSampleSize, set to 64

DelayOnBusy, set to 2000

Use the command esxcfg-advcfg -s <value><parameter> to change these settings. These settings are changed dynamically, and do not require a server reboot.

**Note:** If the queue depth is not set correctly or the system is overly busy due to the IO load, there may be a BUSY response returned for commands. This status will appear in the vmkernel log like the following:

"vmhba0:C0:T1:L0" H:0x0 D:0x8 P:0x0 Possible sense data: 0x0 0x0 0x0

 In the ESX(I) GUI, the above for setting may also be set by going to Configuration-> Software->Advanced Settings-> Disk, as shown in Figure 67 below:

Disk shares, may also be used for tuning the system, however, they are not discussed here and customers are recommended to contact IBM/VMWare support to discuss options regarding using this tuning feature.



Figure 83. Dynamic queue setting in ESXi graphical user interface

## ESX 3.5

### Note:

For VMware, the queue depth setting is HBA, not LUN based, which differs from the other supported operating systems. Refer to the section, "Serial Attached SCSI host attachment" on page 12for further information.

- Execute esxcfg-module –l to get module names module name (should be mptscsi\_2xx)
- 2. Execute esxcfg-module -s "mpt\_can\_queue=63" mptscsi\_2xx
- 3. Execute esxcfg-boot -b
- 4. Reboot the host blade
- 5. Execute esxcfg-module -g mptscsi\_2xx to verify the change

**Note:** If the queue depth is not set correctly or the system is overly busy due to the IO load, there may be a BUSY response returned for commands. This status will appear in the vmkernel log like the following:

vmhba2:0:2:0 status = 8/0 0x0 0x0 0x0

## Specific Instructions for VMware ESX/ESXi 5.1

## About this task

For users running VMware ESX/ESXi 5.1 on their host blades, the following instructions are required.

## Procedure

- 1. Execute esxcli system settings advanced list.
- Verify that the current value of / UserVars/ CIMvmw\_lsiproviderProviderEnabled is 1

Path: /UserVars/CIMvmw\_lsiproviderProviderEnabled

Type: integer

Int Value: 1

Default Int Value: 1

Min Value: 0

Max Value: 1

String Value:

Default String Value:

Valid Characters:

Description: Enable or disable the CIM vmw\_lsiprovider provider

## Figure 84. UserVars/CIMvmw\_IsiproviderProviderEnabled is 1

- Disable the CIM vmw\_lsiprovider provider by executing: esxcli system settings advanced set -o /UserVars/CIMvmw\_lsiproviderProviderEnabled -i 0
- Use the following command to make the change taking effect: /etc/init.d/sfcbd-watchdog restart
- 5. Execute esxcli system settings advanced list again to verify the current value of /UserVars/CIMvmw\_lsiproviderProviderEnabled is 0

Path: /UserVars/CIMvmw\_lsiproviderProviderEnabled Type: integer Int Value: 0 Default Int Value: 1 Min Value: 0 Max Value: 1 String Value: Default String Value: Valid Characters: Description: Enable or disable the CIM vmw\_lsiprovider provider

Figure 85. /UserVars/CIMvmw\_IsiproviderProviderEnabled is 0

## Configuring Multipath on x86-64 (Intel or AMD) Host Running VMware

This section covers the setup and verification of the multipath configuration settings on x86-64 (Intel or AMD) host running VMware.

#### Verify the controller state and preferred path

- Instructions for using CLI
  - 1. Check the controllers are in bound state by issuing the following commands:

## <CLI> list controller

13 PM
:

I	Ct1r#	T	Controller	Status I	Ports	T	LUNs	
T		I						1
T	0	T	Ctlr0	PRIMARY	1	Ī		01
L	1	L	Ctlr1	SECONDARY	1			01
T		I				I		

#### Figure 86. Commands

2. Check your preferred path by issuing the following commands:

<CLI> list pool Current Machine Local Time: 08/05/2013 02:01:06 PM

Poo1#I	ID	Name	RaidType	OwnerCt1r	TotalCap	Avai1Cap	Status	State	Degraded
0		n1_r10	10	Slot 0	1676GB	716GB	Viable-InTransition	ONV	No
11	21	p2r5	5	Slot 1	1460GB	980GB	Viable	ONV	Nol
21	31	p3r0	0	Slot 0	1116GB	876GB	Viable	ONV	Nol
2	41	p4r1	1	5101 1	27900	3900	viable	UNV	NO

### Figure 87. Commands

In this example the pool "p1r10" has its preferred path set to controller 0 as indicated by "Slot 0". All of the volumes (LUNs) belonging to this pool will have a preferred path to controller 0 (also known as bay 3 or I/O module 3). Similarly the "p2r5" pool has its preferred path set to controller 1 as indicated by "Slot 1".

- Instructions for using Storage Configuration Manager
  - 1. Go to the controller tab and check to make sure both controllers are online.
  - 2. Go to the storage pool tab and identify the preferred path by displaying the properties of the storage pool as shown below. Please note that all of the volumes(LUNs) belonging to a given storage pool will have the same preferred path as the storage pool itself. In the example given below, preferred controller ownership is indicated by "Primary Controller" and is showing controller 2 (this is equivalent to "Slot 1" in the CLI display and is the same as bay 4 or I/O module 4)

Pool name: Status:	raid1
General Volumes	Disk Drives
RAID level:	RAID 1
Spare coverage:	1 Global
Primary controller:	Controller 2
Storage Pool Capacity	
	Total Capacity: 279.083 GB
	Allocated: 32 GB
	Available: 247 083 CB

Figure 88. Example of SCM preferred path view

## Identifying the WWN for certain SAS RAID Controller Module

- 1. Open a telnet connection to the SAS switch which belongs to the preferred SAS RAID Module.
- 2. Login to the SAS switch.

Note: The default username and password is USERID/PASSW0RD

**3**. Execute the following command

#### phystat

The WWN for the SAS RAID Controller Module will be listed in the address of PHY 08 to PHY 0A. This WWN will be used in later steps to identify the connection to the specific module.

PHY	State	Enable	Link	Sub	NEn	NSent	Speed	Errors	Address	РНҮ
00	0	0	0	0	00.	0		1		
01	0	0	0	0	00.	0		1		
02	0	0	0	0	00.	0		1		
03	0	0	0	0	00.	0		1		
04	0	0	0	1	00.	0		1		
05	0	0	0	1	00.	0		1		
06	0	0	0	1	00.	0		1		
07	0	0	0	1	00.	0		1		. 07
08	3	1	1	0	00.	0	3. OG.	1	. 5005076B	07402CA0. 08
09	3	1	1	0	00.	0	3. OG.	1	. 5005076B	J7402CAU. 09
0A	3	1	1	0	00.	0	3. OG.	1	. 5005076B	07402CA00A

#### Figure 89. WWN

#### Updating the preferred path policy on VMware

- VMware ESX and ESXi 3.5
  - 1. Open the VMware Infrastructure Client.
  - 2. Select the host that you wish to change in the left pane.
  - 3. In the right pane, click on the Configuration tab.
  - 4. In the Configuration window, by the Details box is a "Properties" link.
  - 5. Click on "Properties" and it will open a Datastore properties window.
  - 6. Select the "Manage Paths" button in the bottom right corner of the window.
  - 7. In the "Manage Paths" window, click on the "Change" button at the top in the Policy box.
  - 8. In the "Manage Paths Selection Policy" window, select the radio button next to "Fixed " and click OK. If "Fixed" policy is already selected, no action is required.
  - **9**. Back out of the other windows and click OK and Close. These changes will need to be made for all ESX hosts that you wish to have this setting.

#### • VMware ESX and ESXi 4.x / 5.x

- 1. Open the vSphere Client.
- 2. Click the host you want to modify and click the Configuration tab.
- **3.** Click "Storage" and select a mapped LUN. And then click the "Properties" link.
- 4. In the "Properties" dialog, select the desired extent, if necessary.
- 5. Click **Extent Device** > **Manage Paths** and obtain the paths in the Manage Path dialog.
- 6. Under the "Policy" section, select "Fixed" from the dropdown and click OK. If "Fixed" policy is already selected, no action is required.
- 7. Click "Change" to confirm the change in path policy. These changes will need to be made for all LUNs mapped.

### Updating the active path settings

- VMware ESX and ESXi 3.5
  - 1. Within the VMware Infrastructure client, highlight the host with access to the SAS RAID Controller Module.
  - **2.** Under configuration, select "Storage" from the side panel/menu and highlight the storage LUN to be changed.
  - 3. Click "Properties" and then select "Manage paths."

10	eu pain when available		Change
aths	(court) are	1.5.1	
)evice	SAN Identifier	Status	Preferred
mhba2:6:5		Active	*

Figure 90. Example of VMware ESX and ESXi 3.5 manage paths Dialog

**Note:** The lower numbered path represents controller0 (vmhba2:6:5) and the higher numbered path represents controller 1 (vmhba2:7:5)

- 4. If the preferred path is same as indicated by the CLI or SCM display, no action is required. If the preferred path does not match what is indicated in the SAS RAID Controller Module CLI or SCM display, click the "Change" button to correct it. Repeat the process for each of the LUNs.
- VMware ESX and ESXi 4.x / 5.x
  - 1. Within the vSphere Client, highlight the host with access to the SAS RAID Controller Module.
  - 2. Under configuration, select "Storage" from the side panel/menu and highlight the storage LUN to be changed.
  - 3. Click "Properties" and then select "Manage paths."

Policy							
Path Selection:		Fixed (VMware)					-
Storage Array Typ	)e:	VMW_SATP_DEFAULT_AA					
Paths	0.5		7//	0.5		78.	
Runtime Name	Targe	t	LUN	State	us	Preferred	
vmhba0:C0:T2:L3			3	۰	Active (I/O)	*	
Name: Runtime Name:	sas.5005 vmhba0:0	076031000228-sas <mark>(5005076b0740b8e0</mark> 20:T2:L3	naa.6005076b0740b8ff4	ib9fbea1	000001ab	Rel	fresh
Name: Runtime Name: <b>Block Adapter</b>	sas.5005 vmhba0:4	076031000228-sas <mark>(5005076b0740b8e0</mark> 20:T2:L3	naa.6005076b0740b8ff4	łb9fbea1	000001ab	Rel	fresh

Figure 91. Example of VMware 4.x / 5.x manage paths Dialog

The red box in the figure highlights the WWN of the controller. Selecting a different volume in the dialog will update the lower sections associated information. One of the WWNs associated with the volume will match the WWN found when using the SAS switch CLI above. In this example the volume with the WWN that matches is for the controller in IO Bay 3.

4. If the preferred path is same as indicated by the CLI or SCM display, no action is required. Repeat the process for each of the LUNs. If the preferred path is different from what is indicated in the SAS RAID Controller Module CLI or SCM display, then this needs to be updated using the ESX CLI or GUI. Repeat the process for each of the LUNs.

# Configuration for SAS Booting on x86-64 (Intel or AMD) Host Running VMware

The following section describes how to configure Remote SAS Booting on x86-64 (Intel or AMD) host running VMware.

Refer to Appendix B, "Appendix B: SAS Boot Pre-Operating System Installation Activities," on page 157, to validate that the system is ready to install a SAS booted operating system.

## **Operating system installation**

Use the applicable procedures and instructions that are provided with your operating system software to configure the operating system on the boot volume that is mapped to the blade server. It is not the intention of this document to show how to install the operating systems or to select which software packages will be installed or required for the initial installation of the operating system.

The ESX Server operating system should contain the latest SAS device drivers and multipath drivers. There is no need to go to the IBM Support web sites for these drivers. There may be patches that are required for your version of ESX server at the VMware Support web site.

## Post-Operating system installation activities

Perform the following steps to complete the ESX Server operating system setup.

## Procedure

- 1. Using the SCM program or the CLI interface the second path to the boot volume can now be mapped to the blade server. At this time additional volumes may also be created and mapped to both SAS ports.
- 2. In the VMware ESX server, rescan the SCSI bus to discover the boot volume on the second path and the newly mapped LUNs. An example of VMware Infrastructure Client screenshot showing the two paths to the ESX Server for the 50GB and 7GB volumes is shown below. Use the Rescan button on the upper right corner to scan for new devices.



Figure 92. Example VMware Dialog showing rescan option

**3.** Right click on the path entry in the Storage Adapter screen under the Configuration tab of the ESX server VMware Infrastructure Client window to verify and set, if required, the preferred path for the mapped volumes. The ESX

Server multipath driver will always use the first known path to the SAS RAID Controller Module volumes as the preferred path by default. Because of the SAS adapter and the BC-S chassis architecture, the first known (scanned) path is normally through the SAS RAID Controller Module controller installed in IO bay 3 of the BC-S chassis. If the volume has the SAS RAID Controller Module in IO bay 4 as the preferred owner, the preferred path for this volume might need to be reset to the SAS RAID Controller Module in IO bay 4 instead of the SAS RAID Controller Module in IO bay 3. An example screenshot is shown below.

WS2003	vmware.localdomain VMwa Getting Started Summary	Virtual Machines	8.5.0, 110268   Evalu	Nation (60 day(s) re	maining) onfiguration Use	rs & Groups 🔪 E \	vents Permission	15
	Hardware		Scorage Adapters				CAN TANKE	Resu
	Health Status		LETTOE 4		ועין	pe	SWIN TOBUIUNER	
	Processors		C vmbba0		Blo	ick SCST		
	Memory		iSCSI Software Ada	ter	0.0			
	Storage		() iSCSI Software A	dapter	iSC	SI		
	Networking		1000					
hba0:0:1 Manage Paths		>	<li></li>					
icu			( ) ( ) ( ) ( ) ( ) ( ) ( ) ( ) ( ) ( )					
			ails					
nhba0:0:1 nhba0:1:1	On     Active	>	CSI Target 0 Path vmhba0:0:0 vmhba0:0:1	Canonical Path vmhba0:0:0 vmhba0:0:1	Type disk	Capacity 50.00 GB 7.00 GB	Hide LUN ID   0	e LUNs
				THE DOUT	GUN	1100 00	-1	
			LSI Target 1	Le leu	1- 1	6	Hide	e LUNS
	Befresh	Change	rdui umbha0utu0	Canonical Paul	diek	EQ OD CP	LON ID	
			vmbba0:1:1	vmhba0:0:1	dick	7 00 GB	1	
	or I could	Help	M I				E FANG.	
		1	- \					
ecent Tasks		T						

Figure 93. Example of VMware Dialog showing active preferred path

4. After installing the operating system in the VMware virtual machine, the "VMware tools" should be installed in the VMware virtual machine. The "VMware tools" is installed by right-clicking on the Guest OS entry and select Install/Update VMware tools from the pull-down menu. Please refer the VMware publications for more info about the "VMware tools" and how to install it.

# Verifying & Setting LUN Parameters on VMWare Guest Operating Systems running Linux

The following procedures are used to verify and set the LUN configuration parameters on VMWare Guest Operating Systems running Linux.

To verify these setting, change the directory to /sys/block/sdXX/device, where sdXX is one of the SAS RAID Controller Module devices. View the contents of the files named queue\_depth and timeout. For example,

```
[ ... ... ] # cd /sys/block/sdb/device
[ ... ... ] # cat queue_depth
32
[ ... ... ] # cat timeout
30
```

Figure 94. VMWare Linux timeout and queue depth settings

**Note:** For running **RHEL 6.x** as VMWare Guest Operating Systems, the SCSI controller need to be set to "LSI logic SAS" in advance to ensure the queue depth setting work properly.

To change the queue\_depth value to the recommended value of 4 use the following procedure:

1. Change to the uDev rules directory as follows:

cd /etc/udev/rules.d
For SLES 10.x edit the file named:
50-udev-default.rules
For SLES 11.x edit the file named:
50-scsidisk.rules
For RHEL5.x / RHEL 6.x edit the file named:
50-udev.rules

2. Look for lines similar to:

ACTION=="add", SUBSYSTEM=="scsi", SYSFS{type}=="0|7|14", \ RUN+="/bin/sh -c 'echo 60 > /sys\$\$DEVPATH/timeout'"

If the value is not 60, then update the value to 60 as shown above.

If the line cannot be found, insert the above line into the file.

3. Insert the below line into the file:

ACTION=="add", SUBSYSTEM=="scsi", SYSFS{type}=="0|7|14", \ RUN+="/bin/sh -c 'echo 4 > /sys\$\$DEVPATH/queue\_depth'"

- 4. Save the file and exit the editor.
- 5. Reboot the system and then verify the queue\_depth value as shown in Figure 94

## Verifying & Setting LUN Parameters on VMWare Guest Operating Systems running Microsoft Windows

The following procedures are used to verify and set the LUN configuration parameters on VMWare Guest Operating Systems running Microsoft Windows.

## About this task

## Note:

- 1. The actual value used depending on the number of LUNs mapping to the host. See Serial Attached SCSI host attachment for more information on how to calculate the correct settings, and then back to this section.
- 2. The SAS HBA driver level needs to be verified with different parameter and route settings for changing the queue depth. To verify the driver level, see Updating the Driver for a SAS HBA on x86-64 (Intel or AMD) Host Running Windows for more information. Check the Properties screen of "SCSI and RAID controllers" (or "Storage Controllers" in Windows Server 2008/2012) in Device manager. The driver level should be listed in the Driver tab.

## Procedure

1. Start the registry editor command by entering the following command from the Windows command prompt.

regedit

- 2. Save a backup copy of the current registry before making any changes. Select the highest level key and then select File → Export.
- Navigate to the following key. Create the key if one is not available. For driver of LSI\_SAS, Computer\HKEY\_LOCAL\_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Services\LSI\_SAS\Parameters\Device For driver of LSI\_SAS2, Computer\HKEY\_LOCAL\_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Services\LSI\_SAS2\Parameters\Device
- 4. Right-click DriverParameter and select Modify from the menu. Create the DriverParameter if one is not available.
- 5. Add the parameter of the SAS registry entry.
  - a. LSI\_SAS with driver version 1.33.01 (or later); LSI\_SAS2 with driver version 2.00.29 (or later).

Add **MaxSASQueueDepth=4** (default 64) after the last entry. Update the value if the entry already exists.

The number is decided by the number of LUNs assigned to the host. Ex: MaxSASQueueDepth = 4 while setting 16 LUNs to the host.

b. LSI\_SAS with driver version prior to version 1.33.01; LSI\_SAS2 with driver version prior to version 2.00.29.

Add **MaximumTargetQueueDepth=4** after the last entry. Update the value if the entry already exists.

**Important:** Make sure to update the value in the registry entry above. See Serial Attached SCSI host attachment for more information on how to calculate the correct settings.

🧖 Registry Editor			
File Edit View Favorites Help			
Device	▲ Name	Туре	Data
PnpInterface	ab (Default)	REG_SZ	(value not set)
SI	ab DriverParameter	REG_SZ	PlaceHolder=0;MaximumTargetQueueDepth=1;
Def.			
R			
5			
•			
1			
55			
ngr			
r –	-		
- 			
ox o			
510			
p20			
Bridge 3.0.0.0			
rv			
5I			
ver			
	<b>-</b>		
	J M\CurrentControlSot\Commit	CACID	-to-VD-uiza
COMPUTER INVESTIGATION CHINE (STOTE)	initententententententententententententent	.es(LSI_SAS(Parame	elersipevile

Figure 95. Example Registry Settings Screen for Windows

- 6. Save changes and exit the registry editor.
- 7. Reboot the host blade for the changes to be applied.

## Troubleshooting

This section covers currently known issues with using the IBM BladeCenter S SAS RAID Controller Module with the host blades running the Linux operating system.

## Concurrent Maintenance using the AMM

When performing maintenance on the SAS RAID Controller Module which requires the module to be powered off and then back on through the AMM, it is possible that all paths may not be restored after the SAS RAID Controller Module has powered back on and bound to the surviving controller.

## About this task

After the maintenance operation is complete, verify that the host blade multipathing has restored all available paths to both SAS RAID Controller Modules. To perform this check on the host blade run the following command as root:

[root@localhost ~] esxcli nmp path list

The output of the command should be similar to the following, showing two paths to each LUN:

sas.5005076031000228-sas.5005076b0740b8a0-naa.6005076b0740b8ff4b21563f00000141
Runtime Name: vmhba0:C0:T1:L0
Device: naa.6005076b0740b8ff4b21563f00000141
Device Display Name: IBM Serial Attached SCSI Disk (naa.6005076b0740b8ff4b21563f00000141)
Group State: active
Storage Array Type Path Config:

Path Selection Policy Path Config: {current: yes; preferred: yes}

sas.5005076031000228-sas.5005076b0740b8e0-naa.6005076b0740b8ff4b21563f00000141
Runtime Name: vmhba0:C0:T2:L0
Device: naa.6005076b0740b8ff4b21563f00000141
Device Display Name: IBM Serial Attached SCSI Disk (naa.6005076b0740b8ff4b21563f00000141)
Group State: active
Storage Array Type Path Config:
Path Selection Policy Path Config: {current: no; preferred: no}

If the output shows only one path or a mix of paths to the SAS RAID Controller Modules, then run the one of the following ways to restore the redundant paths:

### Procedure

- 1. Using the VMware vSphere or VI Client to perform a rescan:
  - a. Log in to the client and select an ESX/ESXi host in your inventory.
  - b. Click the Configuration tab.
  - c. Click Storage Adapters.
  - d. Click the Rescan link.
  - e. Click OK to begin the rescan.

9.191.192.172	fast146 VHware E5X, 4.0.0, 398348								
2008_R2sp1 x64	Getting Started Summary Virtual Mar	chines Resource Allocation Perform	nance Configuration	Users & Groups Events	Permissions.				
	Hardware	Storage Adapters						Refrest	0
	Health Status Processors	Device LSI1064 O vmhba0	Type Block SCSI	WWN		-			
	Memory	Ø vmhbal	Block SCSI			🕑 Rescan			
	Storage     Historiking     Storage Adapters     Historiki Adapters     Adapters	ISCSI Software Adapter	ISCSI			Scan for New S Rescan all host Rescarring all o	torage Devices bus adapters for new adapters can be slow.	storage devices.	
	warranced seconds	Detaits				- Company			
	Software	vmhba1				Scan for New V	MPS Volumes		
	Licensed Features Time Configuration DVS and Routing	View: Devices Paths	Model: LSLIDG4 Targets: 2 Devices: 6 Paths: 12 ew: Devices Patha		Rescan all known storage devices for new WMPS volumes that have been added since the last scan. Rescanning known storage for new file systems is faster than rescanning for new storage.			set.	
	Virtual Machine Startup/Shutdown	Name	Runtime Name	1.07	Type				
	Virtual Machine Swapfie Location	IBM Serial Attached SCSI Disk	haavmhba1:C0:T0	d.1 1	disk	1			
	Security Profile	IBM Serial Attached SCSI Disk (	naa vmhba1:C0:T0	:12 2	disk	-	OK	Cancel	Help
	System Resource Allocation	IBM Serial Attached SCSI Disk (	naavmhba1:C0:T0	:13 3	disk				
	Advanced Settings	IBM Serial Attached SCSI Disk (	naa vmhbaliC0:T0	11.4 4	dsk	Block Adapter	15.00 GB NMP		
		IBM Serial Attached SCSI Disk (	neavmhbel:C0:T0	15 5	disk	Block Adapter	15.00 GB NMP		
		IBM Serial Attached SCSI Disk (	naavmhba1:C0:T0	.16 6	disk	Block Adapter	50.00 GB NMP		
		1							

Figure 96. Perform a rescan usingVMware vSphere to restore the redundant paths

**Note:** This performs a rescan of every installed Hardware Bus Adapter (HBA), regardless of the HBA that is selected in the Storage Adapters view.

- 2. Perform a rescan from the ESX/ESXi host command-line
  - a. Log in to the ESX/ESXi host console.
  - b. Run the command:

#### For ESX/ESXi 4.x

esxcfg-rescan <vmkernel SCSI adapter name>

Where <vmkernel SCSI adapter name> is the vmhba# to be rescanned.

**Note:** The rescan must be performed on each HBA that is attached to the storage that changed. In ESX 4.x there may not be any output if there are no changes.

### For ESXi 5.x

- To rescan all HBAs: esxcli storage core adapter rescan --all

- To rescan a specific HBA: esxcli storage core adapter rescan --adapter<vmkernel SCSI adapter name>

Where <vmkernel SCSI adapter name> is the vmhba# to be rescanned.

Note: There may not be any output if there are no changes. Verify that after running the above command all paths become available using the following command: [root@localhost ~] esxcli nmp path list

# Chapter 5. Chapter 5 IBM Power Systems Running AIX / VIOS Host Attachment

This section describes how to attach a System P host blade running the AIX or VIOS operating system to the SAS RAID Controller Module.

For the most current information on supported hosts and operating systems, fix packs, and i-fixes, review the *IBM SAS RAID Module Interoperability Guide* at:

http://www.ibm.com/systems/support/supportsite.wss/ docdisplay?lndocid=MIGR-5078491&brandind=5000020

The following sections are covered in this chapter:

- "Updating the Driver for a SAS Expansion Card on an IBM Power Blade Running AIX / VIOS" on page 106
- "Configuring Host System Settings on an IBM Power Blade Running AIX / VIOS" on page 106
- "Configuring SDD PCM on an IBM Power Blade Running AIX / VIOS" on page 107
- "Configuration for SAS Booting on an IBM Power Blade Running AIX / VIOS" on page 107
- "Obtaining AIX 6.1 Service Packs and Verifying the Installation" on page 114
- "Obtaining AIX APARs and Verifying the Installation" on page 117
- "Checking System hdisk (volume) Status on AIX" on page 119
- "Installing VIOS on a PS / JS blade with Remote Volumes" on page 121
- "Obtaining VIOS Fix Packs and Verifying the Installation" on page 128
- "Obtaining VIOS i-fixes and Verifying the Installation" on page 131
- "Obtaining the PS / JS (Power / System P) Host Blade BIOS and Verifying the Installation" on page 133
- "Installing SAS Integrated Controller Firmware for JS23/JS43 and PS700/PS701/PS702 Blades" on page 138
- "Installing the SAS Expansion Card Firmware for JS12 and JS22 blades" on page 142

## Updating the Driver for a SAS Expansion Card on an IBM Power Blade Running AIX / VIOS

Drivers are update using AIX fix packs; please refer to the section regarding installation of fix packes for updating the SAS Expansion Card driver.

## Configuring Host System Settings on an IBM Power Blade Running AIX / VIOS

The following section describes how to perform required changes to the host system settings on an IBM PS / JS (Power / pSeries) blade running AIX / VIOS.

## Changing Queue Depth and Hot plug settings

To edit the queue depth settings for host blades running the AIX or VIOS operating system, perform the following steps.

**Note**: These actual value used will depend on the number of LUNs mapped to the host. Refer to the section, "Serial Attached SCSI host attachment" on page 12, to review how to calculate the correct settings, then return to this section.

To identify the current queue depth value, execute the following command on the AIX host blade:

blade1# lsattr -	-El hdisk5		
PCM	PCM/friend/sasother	Path Control Module	False
algorithm	fail_over	Algorithm	True
clr_q	no	Device CLEARS its Queue on error	True
dist_err_pcnt	0	Distributed Error Percentage	True
dist_tw_width	50	Distributed Error Sample Time	True
hcheck_cmd	test_unit_rdy	Health Check Command	True
hcheck_interval	60	Health Check Interval	True
hcheck_mode	nonactive	Health Check Mode	True
max_transfer	0x40000	Maximum TRANSFER Size	True
pvid	none	Physical volume identifier	False
q_err	yes	Use QERR bit	True
q_type	simple	Queuing TYPE	True
queue_depth	5	Queue DEPTH	True
reassign_to	120	REASSIGN time out value	True
reserve_policy	no_reserve	Reserve Policy	True
rw_timeout	30	READ/WRITE time out value	True
size_in_mb	0	Size in Megabytes	False
start_timeout	60	START unit time out value	True
unique_id	362136005076B0741A17F4B71ECF000	Unique device identifier	False
ww_id	6005076b0741a17f4b71ecf000000071	World Wide Identifier	False

**Note:** The queue depth value is identified by the variable queue\_depth and it is 5 by default. Please refer to section "Serial Attached SCSI host attachment" on page 12 for information on how to determine the desired queue depth value.

Change it to a desired value by using the following example.

blade1# chdev -1 hdisk5 -a queue\_depth=3
hdisk5 changed

In the above case queue depth value is being changed to 3

**Note:** In the case of an active volume (a disk which is part of an active volume group), queue depth value should be changed using the following command. Please check the man pages of command chdev for detailed explanation on each option.

blade1# chdev -1 hdisk5 -a -P queue\_depth=3 hdisk5 changed

Verify that the queue depth value is changed to the desired value by using the following command;

lsattr -El hdisk

Reboot the server to have the values take effect.

**Important:** If you remove the disk device from the system, you will need to set the value once the device is reconfigured.

## Configuring SDD PCM on an IBM Power Blade Running AIX / VIOS

This section shows how to configure SDD PCM on an IBM Power Blade Running AIX / VIOS.

For installation and configuration if the SDD PCM driver on AIX host systems, please refer to the *Multipath Subsystem Device Driver User's Guide*:

https://www.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=ssg1S7000303

# Configuration for SAS Booting on an IBM Power Blade Running AIX / VIOS

This section describes the configuration for SAS booting on an IBM PS / JS (Power / pSeries) blade running AIX / VIOS.

# Creating a SAS RAID Module volume for the SAS boot installation

## About this task

**Before beginning:** 

- Ensure the SAS RAID Modules are powered ON.
- Ensure the SAS RAID Modules are in dual controller mode and in Primary/Secondary state.

## Procedure

1. Use the IBM Storage Configuration Manager (SCM) or the SAS RAID Controller Module command line interface (CLI) to create at least one volume, a boot volume, for each blade server in the IBM BladeCenter S (BC S) chassis. It is recommended that you map this boot volume as LUN 0 for each blade server.

The following are guidelines for creating the boot volume:

- a. Ensure that the volume that is used as the boot volume has enough free disk space to contain the operating system, its swap space, and any application code. The volume must also be large enough to accommodate future updates.
- b. For protection against disk failure, the boot volume should be part of RAID 1, 10 or 5 storage pools. You can use a RAID 0 pool for a boot volume, however there is no protection against disk failure.

- **c**. Even though you can create the boot volumes for all the server blades in a BC S chassis as part of the same RAID storage pools, it is recommended to split the boot volumes into at least two RAID storage pools where one pool has the SAS RAID Module in bay 3 as the preferred owner and the other pool has the SAS RAID Module in bay 4 as the preferred owner.
- d. Each blade server supports a maximum of sixteen volumes. At this time, only create the volume that is going to be used as the boot volume. You can use additional volumes later on to store operating system code, swap space, application program code, and application data. If you choose to create volumes other than the boot volume at this time, do not map the additional volumes to the blade server SAS ports. You can create the additional volumes and map them to the blade server as part of the post operating system installation activities.

**Important:** Map this boot volume to only **one** of the blade server SAS ports. The system presents multiple disk device entries when it sees the same boot volume on multiple paths. For example, if the boot volume is mapped to two SAS ports, the system will present two available disks that can be used for the operating system installation. If you are not using SCM, you can obtain the WWPN of the blade server SAS port by using telnet to connect to the SAS switch component of the SAS RAID Module and running the **sasport status all** command. In the example SAS Switch phy output figure below, the output of the **sasport status all** command shows the WWPN of the SAS port in blade server 1 is **500062B0000D7A10**.

**Note:** The blade servers must be turned on and should be at the Software Maintenance System (SMS) menu so that the SAS switch can discover the SAS card WWPN. Once you map the boot volume to the SAS port in the blade server, you should see the volume displayed as an hdisk in the AIX installation menu.

```
=== IBM BladeCenter(R) SAS RAID Controller Module ===
Login: USERID
Password: *******
USERID logged on
MAIN> sasport status all
ID SAS Port Name SAS Address Enable Flt Status
____+_____
+---+------
E1 External Port 1 True Off NoCable
PHY 1C 000000000000000 True NoCable
PHY 1D 000000000000000 True NoCable
PHY 1E 000000000000000000 True NoCable
PHY 1F 000000000000000 True NoCable
E2 External Port 2 True Off NoCable
PHY 20 00000000000000 True NoCable
PHY 21 000000000000000 True NoCable
PHY 22 000000000000000 True NoCable
PHY 23 0000000000000000 True NoCable
E3 External Port 3 True Off Normal
PHY 00 0000000000000000000 True Normal
PHY 01 000000000000000 True Normal
PHY 02 000000000000000 True Normal
PHY 03 000000000000000 True Normal
E4 External Port 4 True Off NoCable
PHY 04 000000000000000 True NoCable
PHY 05 000000000000000 True NoCable
PHY 06 000000000000000000 True NoCable
PHY 07 000000000000000 True NoCable
B1 Blade Slot Connection 1 True Off Normal
PHY 1B 500062B0000D7A10 True Normal
B2 Blade Slot Connection 2 True Off Normal
PHY 1A 500062B00007CD84 True Normal
B3 Blade Slot Connection 3 True Off Normal
PHY 19 500062B0000D79F4 True Normal
B4 Blade Slot Connection 4 True Off Normal
PHY 18 500062B00007E6DC True Normal
B5 Blade Slot Connection 5 True Off NoCable
PHY 17 000000000000000 True NoCable
B6 Blade Slot Connection 6 True Off Normal
PHY 16 500062B00007E6E0 True Normal
B7 RAID HA Connection True Off Normal
PHY 0A 5005076B07418C20 True Normal
PHY 09 5005076B07418C20 True Normal
PHY 08 5005076B07418C20 True Normal
PHY OF 5005076B07418C20 True Normal
+----
ID SAS Port Name SAS Address Enable Flt Status
```

Figure 97. Example SAS Switch phy output

**Note:** When the boot volume is created, you can specify that the storage pool with the SAS RAID Module in bay 3 (-port 0 option when creating the pool) be the preferred owner, or that the storage pool with the SAS RAID Module in bay 4 (-port 1 option when creating the pool) be the preferred owner. Regardless of this preferred owner setting always use the WWPN of

the SAS port that is shown in the **sasport status all** command of the SAS switch in bay 3 for the initial OS installation (this is the first SAS port of the SAS card adapter). The first SAS port of a two port SAS card adapter will always have a WWPN that is one less than the WWPN of the second adapter. For example, if the first SAS port WWPN is '500062B0000D7A10', the second SAS port WWPN will be '500062B0000D7A11'.

2. If there is an internal hard drive installed in the blade server, it must be removed before installing the operating system on the remote boot volume.

## Installing AIX 6.1 on a remote volume

Complete the following steps to start the AIX installation from an installation DVD.

## Procedure

- 1. Insert the DVD into the DVD-ROM drive in the Media Tray of the BladeCenter S chassis.
- Connect to the Advanced Management Module (AMM) and select Blade Tasks -> Remote Control from the navigation menu.
- 3. Click Start Remote Control to open a Remote Console window.
- 4. In the Remote Control window, click the **Media Tray** list and select the blade where you will load the new AIX operating system.
- 5. In the Remote Control window, click the blade list and select the blade that will be loading the operating system.
- 6. To begin loading the new OS, you must reboot the blade and set it to boot from the DVD-ROM drive. From the Remote Control window, select the **Power Control -> Restart**.
  - Monitor the reboot of the blade from the Remote Console window.
- 7. As the blade reboots, press 1 to enter the SMS Menu.

#### Note:

- The menu options display for a short period of time. If it is missed reboot the blade again.
- Some blades may require you to enter options before displaying the SMS menu option. A screen may appear asking you to enter the number 1 to choose that screen as the display. It may then ask you to enter an option to continue with the boot process, after which the option to enter the SMS menu displays as shown in the figure below.



Figure 98. Reboot screen with option to enter SMS menu

2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7.	Setup Remote IPL (Initia) Change SCSI Settings Select Console Select Boot Options Firmware Boot Side Options Select Keyboard	Program Load)
Navi	gation Keys:	

Figure 99. The SMS Main Menu

- 8. From the SMS Main Menu, enter the number for the **Select Boot Options** menu and press Enter.
- 9. Enter the number for the Select Install / Boot Device menu and press Enter.
- 10. Enter the number for the CD/DVD menu and press Enter.
- 11. Enter the number for the List All Devices and press Enter.
- 12. A list of all available devices now loads (note this may take a little time). Enter the number of the **USB CD-ROM** device and press Enter. For this

example, the USB CD-ROM is device 3.



Figure 100. An SMS menu showing a list of CD and DVD devices

- 13. Enter 2 for Normal Boot Mode and press Enter.
- 14. Enter 1 for Yes and press Enter.

Note: It may take up to 10 minutes before the installation begins.

**15**. When the installation screen appears, the system console will need to be defined. Follow the instructions on the screen to press F1 and then press Enter to use the current display as the system console.

****** Please define the System Console. *******
Type the F1 key and press Enter to use this display as the system console.
Pour definir ce terminal comme console systeme, appuyez sur la touche F1 puis sur Entree.
Taste F1 und anschliessend die Eingabetaste druecken, um diese Anzeige als Systemkonsole zu verwenden.
Premere il tasto F1 ed Invio per usare questo terminale come console per il sistema.
Pulse la tecla F1 y pulse Intro para utilizar esta pantalla como consola del sistema.
Premeu la tecla F1 i després Intro per utilitzar aquesta pantalla com a consola del sistema.
Digite a tecla F1 e pressione Enter para utilizar este vídeo como console do sistema.

Figure 101. Define the system console for the AIX installation

- **16.** Enter the number of the language you want to use during the installation and press Enter.
- 17. Enter 2 and press Enter to go to the Installation and Settings screen.

**Note:** In the below figure, there are two items listed under option 1, System Settings. The first option is **Method of Installation**. For a Blade that has never had an AIX installation this item will always be set to **New and Complete Overwrite**. However, if the blade has had a previous installation of AIX then there is the option to update the installation or to overwrite the previous installation. For either case, ensure **New and Complete Overwrite** is selected.

		Install	lation and Settings
Eitk humb	ner ber	type 0 and press E of the setting you	Enter to install with current settings, or type the a want to change and press Enter.
		System Settings: Method of Instal Disk Where You b	llationNew and Complete Overwrite Want to Installhdisk0
	2	Primary Language E Cultural Convent Language Keyboard Keuboard Tupe	Environment Settings (AFTER Install): tionEnglish (United States) English (United States) English (United States) Default
		Security Model More Options (Sof	Default ftware install options)
		Install with the c	current settings listed above.
	88 99	+- Help ?   Previous Menu	WARNING: Base Operating System Installation will destroy or impair recovery of ALL data on the destination disk hdisk0.
>>>	Cho	oice [0]: 🔤	

Figure 102. Installation and Setting screen of the AIX installation

- 18. Enter 1 and press Enter to go to System Settings.
- **19**. If the blade had a previously AIX installation, Enter **1** for **New and Complete Overwrite**.
- 20. Enter the number of the hdisk to be used for the installation and press Enter.

	Change	Disk(s) Where Yo	u Want to	Install		
Type o Enter. At lea: by >>>	ne or more To cance st one bo	e numbers for the l a choice, type otable disk must	disk(s) to the corresp be selected	o be used for conding numbe d. The currer	r installa er and Pre nt choice	tion and press ss Enter. is indicated
	Name	Location Code	Size(MB)	VG Status	Bootable	
>>> = 1	hdisk0	03-08-00	70006	none	Yes	No
>>> 0 55 66 77 88 99	Contin More Di: Devices Display Help ? Previou:	ue with choices i sk Options not known to Bas More Disk Inform s Menu	ndicated al e Operatino ation	oove g System Ins	tallation	
>>> Ch	oice [0]:	12				

Figure 103. Example from a JS22 blade without an internal hard drive

21. Once the hdisk has been selected, enter 0 for **Continue with choices indicated above** and press Enter. The Installation and Settings menu will display with your choice.



Figure 104. Updated Installation and Settings screen of the AIX installation

- 22. Proceed with normal installation.
- **23**. Once installation is complete, use the SCM program or the CLI interface to map the boot volume to the second SAS port in the blade. Create additional volumes and map them to both SAS ports.
- 24. In order to see both paths and any additional LUNs reboot the blade now.
- **25.** To check the state of the paths and remote volumes, run the commands from section "Checking System hdisk (volume) Status on AIX" on page 119.

## **Obtaining AIX 6.1 Service Packs and Verifying the Installation**

This section describes the steps required to obtain AIX Service Pack code.

### About this task

For the most current information on supported operating systems, fix packs, and i-fixes, review the *IBM SAS RAID Module Interoperability Guide* at:

http://www.ibm.com/systems/support/supportsite.wss/ docdisplay?lndocid=MIGR-5078491&brandind=5000020

#### Procedure

- Open a web browser to the following URL: http://www.ibm.com/support/fixcentral/ This opens the IBM Support Fix Central website.
- 2. From the IBM Support Fix Central page, select the following options from the corresponding lists then click Continue:

Option	Description	
Product Group:	System p	
Product:	AIX	
Version:	6.1	
Fix Type:	Fix packs	

- **3**. In this example, select TL 6100-03-00-0920 from the Select a Technology Level list, then click Go.
- 4. Click the link for the 6100-03-01-0921 fix pack to open the 6100-03 Service Pack 1 page.

Fix packs				
Name	Type	Prereqs	Date	
6100-03-01-0921	Service Pack	6100-03-00-0920	May 2009	
6100-03-00-0920	Technology Level		May 2009	

Figure 105. 6100-03-01-0921 fix pack

5. On the 6100-03 Service Pack 1 website, select **No**, **I am already at Technology Level 6100-03** and click **Continue**.

## 6100-03 Service Pack 1

for AIX 6.1 operating system



### Available packages

Your package is pre-selected. Service Packs are cumulative. Newer Service Packs in a Technology Level contain all the updates from previous Service Packs.

6100-03 Service Pack 1

Option

Include Technology Level package?

No, I am already at Technology Level 6100-03

○ Yes, include Technology Level 6100-03 with the Service Pack

🕒 Continue

Figure 106. 6100-03 Service Pack 1

6. From the Package download page, select **Download using Bulk FTP** and click **Continue**.

## Package download

#### Obtain package

O Download using Download Director

💽 Download using Bulk FTP



Order on CD (requires SWMA and registration)

## Continue Continue

## Figure 107. Package download page

**7.** Click **Continue** on the Download using Bulk FTP page. A notification will appear with the location of the file that you can download using FTP as seen in Figure 85: Select how to download the Service Pack.

IBM				
Download using Bulk FTP				
The fix packages of the fix package using the ftp of the ftp of the ftp of the ftp of the fit of th	ge has been successfully copied to a temporary location for you to get command. The package will be available for the next 72 hours. s page			
Fix package	location			
FTP server	download2.boulder.ibm.com			
Userid	anonymous			
Password	send your complete e-mail address as password			
Directory	/ecc/hsb/H06354203			
This package	will be available for the next 72 hours.			
FTP hints				
Most FTP comm The subcomm type to binary When you disa intervention. Example	mand line programs support getting multiple files with one subcommand. and is <b>mget</b> . Before you run <b>mget</b> you should first set the download , and then disable prompting. Binary mode should be set in all cases. able prompts, the <b>mget</b> command runs without requiring user			
ftp>binary				
ftp>prompt ftp>mget *.bf				
Terms of us	e Privacy Close [x]			

Figure 108. Select how to download the Service Pack

**Note:** The FTP Server, Userid, Password, and Directory information received in the notification will be needed in order to FTP the SP1 code to the AIX blade.

- 8. Install the Service Pack using normal installation procedures.
- 9. After the installation completes, reboot the blade.

10. When the blade is back up, open a new terminal window and enter **oslevel** –**s** to verify the existing code level.



Figure 109. oslevel –s

## **Obtaining AIX APARs and Verifying the Installation**

The following section describes how to obtain and install AIX APARs for the SAS RAID Controller Module.

## About this task

For the most current information on required AIX APARs, review the *IBM SAS RAID Module Interoperability Guide* at:

http://www.ibm.com/systems/support/supportsite.wss/ docdisplay?lndocid=MIGR-5078491&brandind=5000020

### Procedure

1. AIX APARs may be found in two location, BM FixCentral or the FTP APAR download site. The following describes how to access both locations.

#### Location APARs on Fix Central

a. Open a web browser to the following URL:

http://www.ibm.com/support/fixcentral/

The window will open the IBM Support Fix Central website.

b. Select the following options from the corresponding lists on the Fix Central page, then click **Continue**:

Product Group:	System p
Product:	AIX
Version:	6.1
Fix Type:	Fix search

- c. Enter the desired APAR number on the Fix Search page. Select **Date: newest** *first,* then click **Search**.
- d. Follow the onscreen instructions to locate and download the APAR.

#### Locating APARs on FTP APAR download site

- a. ftp to public.dhe.ibm.com: ftp public.dhe.ibm.com
   login: anonymous
   password: anything
- b. cd aix/efixes/izxxxx where xxxxx = apar #
- **c**. type the following:

- bin prompt mget \* bye
- d. This will download 2 files: README.txt; izxxxx.epkg.Z
- **2**. Install the APARs using normal APAR installation procedures. Once all APAR installations are completed successfully, run the following command to verify the state of the APARs.

emgr -1

**Note:** All of the APARs should have a State of 'Q' for 'reboot required'. See the example in Figure 86: emgr -1 command results.

# ei	ngr -l				
ID	STATE	LABEL	INSTALL TIME	UPDATED BY	ABSTRACT
=== 1 2	*Q* *Q*	iz52971 iz53650	06/23/09 17:19:22 06/23/09 17:20:37		Fix SAS disk description Allow more SCSI Busy status
STA S U U B I R T S P S N Q P S N Q P S N Q P S N S TA	TE codd = STABI = MOUM3 = REB006 = REB006 = REB06 = REM07 = TEST1 = PATC1 = STAF = STAF = STAF = B007 = B007 = REM07 = REM0	es: LE INTED DT REQUIRED DT REQUIRED DT REQUIRED SLE HED PATCHED SLE + PATCH SLE + PATCH SLE + NOT P, I MAGE MOD I IMAGE MOD DVING + REB	ED ATCHED IFIED + PATCHED IFIED + NOT PATCHEJ OOT REQUIRED	D	

Figure 110. emgr –I command results

- 3. Reboot the blade.
- 4. Once the blade comes back up, run the following commands to change the working directory and check the status of the APARs again. All of the APARs should have a state of 'S' for 'Stable'.

cd /usr/update/apars emgr -l
# e	mgr -1				
ID	STATE	LABEL	INSTALL TIME	UPDATED BY	ABSTRACT
1	s s	iz52971 iz53650	06/23/09 17:19:22 06/23/09 17:20:37		Fix SAS disk description Allow more SCSI Busy status
STA S MUQ B I R T P N S N P S N P N Q P N Q R Q #	TE         code           =         STABL           =         MNOUNT           =         UNMOU           =         REBOO           =         BROKE           =         INSTA           =         REMOV           =         REMOV           =         PATCH           =         STAB           =         STAB           =         BOOT           =         REMOV	S: ED NTED T REQUIRED N LLING ING ED ED ATCHED LE + PATCHE LE + PATCHE LE + NOT PA IMAGE MODI VING + REEC	ED ATCHED (FIED + PATCHED (FIED + NOT PATCHEI NOT REQUIRED	)	

Figure 111. emgr –I command results after reboot

# Checking System hdisk (volume) Status on AIX

This section describes how to verify the state of the AIX blade.

#### About this task

Once all of the necessary software updates are completed, you can assign volumes to the blade using SCM or CLI. Once the configuration completes, perform the following steps to verify the state of the AIX blade.

#### Procedure

1. Open a new terminal window on the AIX blade and run the following command.

lspath

The **lspath** command shows the available paths to the blade. If the system has an internal hard drive, for example hdisk0, will have only one path. All other hdisks will have two paths. On a JS12/JS22 blade, the hdisks will be assigned to SAS1. hdisks on JS23/JS43 blades will be assigned to SAS0. See the example below for a JS12/JS22 blade with two paths to each of 8 hdisks (LUNs).

[root@localhost] / # lspath Enabled hdisk0 sas0 Enabled hdisk1 sas1 Enabled hdisk2 sas1 Enabled hdisk3 sas1 Enabled hdisk4 sas1 Enabled hdisk5 sas1 Enabled hdisk6 sas1 Enabled hdisk7 sas1 Enabled hdisk8 sas1 Enabled hdisk1 sas1 Enabled hdisk2 sas1 Enabled hdisk3 sas1 Enabled hdisk4 sas1 Enabled hdisk5 sas1 Enabled hdisk6 sas1 Enabled hdisk7 sas1 Enabled hdisk8 sas1

2. Run the following command in the terminal window:

lsdev -Cc disk

The **lsdev** –**Cc** disk command shows all of the drives available to the blade. The internal hard drive on a JS12/JS22 blade is hdisk0 SAS Disk Drive. All other drives are virtual hard drives (LUNs). All of the virtual hard drives should be of type 'SAS IBM 1820 Disk'.

[root@localhost] / # lsdev -Cc disk hdisk0 Available 00-08-00 SAS Disk Drive hdisk1 Available 03-08-00 MPIO Other SAS IBM 1820 Disk hdisk2 Available 03-08-00 MPIO Other SAS IBM 1820 Disk hdisk3 Available 03-08-00 MPIO Other SAS IBM 1820 Disk hdisk4 Available 03-08-00 MPIO Other SAS IBM 1820 Disk hdisk5 Available 03-08-00 MPIO Other SAS IBM 1820 Disk hdisk6 Available 03-08-00 MPIO Other SAS IBM 1820 Disk hdisk6 Available 03-08-00 MPIO Other SAS IBM 1820 Disk hdisk7 Available 03-08-00 MPIO Other SAS IBM 1820 Disk hdisk7 Available 03-08-00 MPIO Other SAS IBM 1820 Disk hdisk8 Available 03-08-00 MPIO Other SAS IBM 1820 Disk

If the results of the **lspath** and **lsdev** –**Cc** disk commands match the configuration in SCM, then the blade is ready for use.

If the results of these two commands do **not** match the expected configuration, run the following commands to delete the drives and re-discover them.

a. Run the following command for each hdisk (not including the internal hard drive hdisk0 or the boot volume):

rmdev -dl hdisk#

Example: rmdev –dl hdisk1, rmdev –dl hdisk2, rmdev –dl hdisk3, etc.

b. When all of the hdisks are removed, run the following command to re-discover the hdisks.

cfgmgr −v

- **c**. When the **cfgmgr** –**v** command completes, run the **lspath** command from step #1 and the **lsdev** –**Cc** disk command from step #2 to verify that the drives reported match the expected configuration.
- 3. Run the following command to check the status of an hdisk.

lsattr -El hdiskX (where X is the number of the hdisk)

jsblade9> lsatt:	c -El hdisk5		
PCM	PCM/friend/sasother	Path Control Module	Fals
e	- 11 IV		_
algorithm	fail_over	Algorithm	True
cir_q	no	Device CLEARS its Queue on error	True
dist_err_pcnt	0	Distributed Error Percentage	True
dist_tw_width	50	Distributed Error sample lime	True
habeak interval	test_unit_rdy	Health Check Command	True
hcheck mode	nonactive	Health Check Mode	True
may transfer	0v40000	Mayimum TRANSFER Size	True
pyid	0000c93aad1de1250000000000000000	Physical volume identifier	Fals
e			
q err	yes	Use QERR bit	True
d type	simple	Queuing TYPE	True
queue_depth		Queue DEPTH	True
reassign_to	120	REASSIGN time out value	True
reserve_policy	no_reserve	Reserve Policy	True
rw_timeout	30	READ/WRITE time out value	True
size_in_mb		Size in Megabytes	Fals
e			-
start_timeout		START unit time out value	True
unique_id	362136005076B0740D0FF4A27BB49000002E071820N00031BMsas	Unique device identifier	Fais
e	600E076b074040ff4-27bb40000002a	Nould Mide Identifier	Fala
ww_10	00030/0D0/400011482/DD4900000026/	world wide identifier	rais
jsblade9>			

Figure 112. The status of an hdisk

**Note:** The lsattr –El hdiskX output above indicates that the size of the hdisk is 0 (size\_in\_mb 0). To see the actual size of the hdisk, run a **bootinfo** –**s** hdiskX command as shown below. The size displayed will be in Megabytes.



Figure 113. bootinfo –s hdiskX command

# Installing VIOS on a PS / JS blade with Remote Volumes

The following section describes how to install VIOS 2.1.1 on a PS / JS blade with remote volumes.

For the most current information on supported operating systems review the *IBM SAS RAID Module Interoperability Guide*.

# Creating a remote volume for the SAS boot installation

The section shows how to create a remote volume for the SAS boot installation.

# About this task

#### **Before Beginning**

- Ensure the SAS RAID Modules are powered ON.
- Ensure the SAS RAID Modules are in dual controller mode and in Primary/Secondary state.

## Procedure

Use the SCM or CLI create at least one volume, a boot volume, for each blade server in the BC S chassis. It is recommended that you map this boot volume as LUN 0 for each blade server. Follow the following guidelines when creating the boot volume.

The following are guidelines for creating the boot volume:

- 1. Ensure the volume that is used as the boot volume has enough free disk space to contain the operating system, its swap space, and any application code. The volume must also be large enough to accommodate future updates.
- **2**. For protection against disk failure, the boot volume should be part of RAID 1, 10 or 5 storage pools. You can use a RAID 0 pool for a boot volume, however there is no protection against disk failure.
- **3**. Even though you can create the boot volumes for all the server blades in a BC S chassis as part of the same RAID storage pools, it is recommended to split the boot volumes into at least two RAID storage pools where one pool has the SAS RAID Module in bay 3 as the preferred owner and the other pool has the SAS RAID Module in bay 4 as the preferred owner.
- 4. Each blade server supports a maximum of sixteen volumes. At this time, only create the volume that is going to be used as the boot volume. You can use additional volumes late on to store operating system code, swap space, application program code, and application data. If you choose to create volumes other than the boot volume at this time, do not map the additional volumes to the blade server SAS ports. You can create the additional volumes and map them to the blade server as part of the post operating system installation activities.

**Important:** Map this boot volume to only **one** of the blade server SAS ports. The system presents multiple disk device entries when it sees the same boot

volume on multiple paths. For example, if the boot volume is mapped to two SAS ports, the system will present two available disks that can be used for the operating system installation. If you are not using SCM, you can obtain the WWPN of the blade server SAS port by using telnet to connect to the SAS switch component of the SAS RAID Module and running the **sasport status all** command. In Figure 88: sasport status all command output, the output of the **sasport status all** command shows the WWPN of the SAS port in blade server 1 is **500062B0000D7A10**.

**Note:** The blade servers must be turned on and should be at the SMS menu so that the SAS switch can discover the SAS card WWPN. Once you map the boot volume to the SAS port in the blade server, you should see the volume displayed as an hdisk in the AIX installation menu.

```
=== IBM BladeCenter(R) SAS RAID Controller Module ===
Login: USERID
Password: *******
USERID logged on
MAIN> sasport status all
ID SAS Port Name SAS Address Enable Flt Status
____+_____
E1 External Port 1 True Off NoCable
PHY 1C 000000000000000 True NoCable
PHY 1D 0000000000000000 True NoCable
PHY 1E 0000000000000000000 True NoCable
PHY 1F 0000000000000000000 True NoCable
E2 External Port 2 True Off NoCable
PHY 20 000000000000000 True NoCable
PHY 21 000000000000000 True NoCable
PHY 22 000000000000000 True NoCable
PHY 23 000000000000000 True NoCable
E3 External Port 3 True Off Normal
PHY 00 0000000000000000000 True Normal
PHY 01 000000000000000 True Normal
PHY 02 000000000000000 True Normal
PHY 03 000000000000000 True Normal
E4 External Port 4 True Off NoCable
PHY 04 0000000000000000000 True NoCable
PHY 05 0000000000000000000 True NoCable
PHY 06 000000000000000000 True NoCable
PHY 07 000000000000000 True NoCable
B1 Blade Slot Connection 1 True Off Normal
PHY 1B 500062B0000D7A10 True Normal
B2 Blade Slot Connection 2 True Off Normal
PHY 1A 500062B00007CD84 True Normal
B3 Blade Slot Connection 3 True Off Normal
PHY 19 500062B0000D79F4 True Normal
B4 Blade Slot Connection 4 True Off Normal
PHY 18 500062B00007E6DC True Normal
B5 Blade Slot Connection 5 True Off NoCable
PHY 17 000000000000000 True NoCable
B6 Blade Slot Connection 6 True Off Normal
PHY 16 500062B00007E6E0 True Normal
B7 RAID HA Connection True Off Normal
PHY 0A 5005076B07418C20 True Normal
PHY 09 5005076B07418C20 True Normal
PHY 08 5005076B07418C20 True Normal
PHY OF 5005076B07418C20 True Normal
ID SAS Port Name SAS Address Enable Flt Status
```

#### Figure 114. sasport status all command output

**Note:** When the boot volume is created, you can specify that the storage pool with the SAS RAID Module in bay 3 (-port 0 option when creating the pool) be the preferred owner, or that the storage pool with the SAS RAID Module in bay 4 (-port 1 option when creating the pool) be the preferred owner. Regardless of this preferred owner setting, always use the WWPN of the SAS

port that is shown in the **sasport status all** command of the SAS switch in bay 3 for the initial OS installation (this is the first SAS port of the SAS card adapter). The first SAS port of a two port SAS card adapter will always have a WWPN that is one less than the WWPN of the second adapter. For example, if the first SAS port WWPN is '500062B0000D7A10', the second SAS port WWPN will be '500062B0000D7A11'.

If there is an internal hard drive installed in the blade server, you should disable it before installing the operating system on the remote boot volume.

# Installing VIOS to a Volume

Complete the following steps to start the installation from an installation DVD.

#### Procedure

- 1. Insert the Installation DVD into the DVD-ROM drive in the Media Tray of the BladeCenter S chassis.
- Connect to the Advanced Management Module (AMM) and select Blade Tasks -> Remote Control from the navigation menu.
- 3. Click Start Remote Control to open a Remote Control window.
- 4. In the Remote Control window, click the **Media Tray** list and select the Blade where you will load the new AIX operating system.
- 5. In the Remote Control window, click the blade list and select the blade that will be loading the operating system.
- 6. To begin loading the new OS, you must reboot the blade and set it to boot from the DVD-ROM drive. From the Remote Control window, select the **Power Control -> Restart**.

Monitor the reboot of the blade from the Remote Console window.

7. As the blade reboots, press 1 to enter the SMS Menu.

#### Note:

- The menu options display for a short period of time. If it is missed reboot the blade again.
- Some blades may require you to enter options before displaying the SMS menu option. A screen may appear asking you to enter the number 1 to choose that screen as the display. It may then ask you to enter an option to continue with the boot process, after which the option to enter the SMS menu displays as shown in Example of the SMS Main Menu figure.



Figure 115. Reboot screen with option to enter SMS menu

4. 5. 6. 7.	Change SCSI Settings Select Console Select Boot Options Firmware Boot Side Optic Select Keyboard	ons
Navig	ation Keys:	

Figure 116. Example of the SMS Main Menu

- 8. From the SMS Main Menu, enter the number for the **Select Boot Options** menu and press Enter.
- 9. Enter the number for the Select Install / Boot Device menu and press Enter.
- 10. Enter the number for the CD/DVD menu and press Enter.
- 11. Enter the number for the List All Devices and press Enter.
- 12. A list of all available devices now loads (note this may take a little time). Enter the number of the **USB CD-ROM** device and press Enter. For this

example, the USB CD-ROM is device 3.



Figure 117. USB CD-ROM - device 3

- 13. Enter 2 for Normal Boot Mode and press Enter.
- 14. Enter 1 for Yes and press Enter.

**Note:** It may take up to 10 minutes before the installation begins.

**15**. When the installation screen appears, you need to define the system console. Follow the instructions on the screen, press F1, then press Enter to use the current display as the system console.

****** Please define the System Console. ******
Type the F1 key and press Enter to use this display as the system console.
Pour definir ce terminal comme console systeme, appuyez sur la touche F1 puis sur Entree.
Tasté F1 und anschliessend die Eingabetaste druecken, um diese Anzeige als Systemkonsole zu verwenden.
Premere il tasto F1 ed Invio per usare questo terminale come console per il sistema.
Pulse la tecla F1 y pulse Intro para utilizar esta pantalla como consola del sistema.
Premeu la tecla F1 i després Intro per utilitzar aquest. pantalla com a consola del sistema.
Digite a tecla F1 e pressione Enter para utilizar este vídeo como console do sistema.

Figure 118. System console

16. To use English type the number 1 then press Enter.

- **17**. Type the number **1** for **Install with Default Settings (recommended)** and press Enter.
- **18**. Type the number **1** to **Continue with Install** and press Enter. Note that installation will be applied to hdisk0.



Figure 119. System backup Installation Summary



Figure 120. Installing base dperating system

**19**. You can monitor the installation from the screen in Figure 5.2.6. The installation takes approximately 45-60 minutes to complete. Once the installation is completed, the blade will reboot automatically.

Note: Login will now be padmin.

- **20**. Once installation is complete, use SCM or CLI to map the boot volume to the second SAS port in the blade. Create additional volumes and map them to both SAS ports.
- 21. To see both paths and any additional LUNs reboot the blade now.
- 22. To check the state of the paths and the remote volumes, run the commands from "Checking System hdisk (volume) Status on AIX" on page 119. To use the commands in that section on the VIOS OS, you must enter the AIX kernel by running the **oem\_setup\_env** command first.

# **Obtaining VIOS Fix Packs and Verifying the Installation**

The following shows an example version for the VIOS Fix pack level.

#### About this task

For the most current information on VIOS fix packs review the *IBM SAS RAID Module Interoperability Guide*.

Open a web browser to the following URL:

http://www.ibm.com/support/fixcentral/

This opens the IBM Support Fix Central website.

#### Procedure

1. From the IBM Support Fix Central page, select the following options from the corresponding lists then click **Continue**:

Product Group:	System p			
Product:	Virtualization software			

# **Fix Central**

Fix Central provides fixes and updates for your systems software, hardware, and operating system. For additional information, click on the following link.

Getting started with Fix Central

Product Group		
System p	~	
Product		
Virtualization software	~	
Virtualization software	×	

Figure 121. Fix Central search page

2. Click the link for Virtual I/O Server.

# Support for Virtualization Software

Virtualization software enables better utilization of IT resources. This support site provides service updates and technical resources for virtualization software running on multiple operating systems.

#### Virtualization products

Service updates and information are currently available for the following products:

- · Partition Load Manager
- · Live Partition Mobility
- Virtual I/O Server
- Virtualization Engine
- PowerVM Workload Partitions Manager for AIX
- PowerVM Lx86 for x86 Linux applications

Virtual I/O Server, Live Partition Mobility and PowerVM Lx86 for x86 Linux applications are part of the PowerVM Editions hardware features.

Figure 122. Example of VIOS code link

3. Click the link for Download the latest VIOS V2.1 Fix Pack.

#### Latest fix pack

This Fix Pack can only be applied to a VIOS that is at VIOS Version 2.1.0. If your VIOS is at a lower level, you must first use the Migration DVD method to upgrade your VIOS to Version 2.1.0.

Download the latest VIOS V2.1 Fix Pack

Figure 123. VIOS V2.1 Fix Pack

4. Click the link for Fix Pack 21.

VIOS Update package							
Package	ioslevel	Description					
Fix Pack 21	2.1.1.10	Fix Pack 21 provides fixes for Virtual I/O Server Version 2.1.0. Applying this package upgrades the VIOS to the latest level. You must use the VIOS migration media to move to VIOS 2.1.0 from a lower level before you can apply this Fix Pack.					
		If your VIOS is already Version 2.1.0, you should upgrade to Fix Pack 21.					

Figure 124. Fix Pack 21

5. Links for the ISO images to create installation disks are located towards the end of the page.

Retrieve the latest fix pack as four ISO images Fix Pack 21 ISO Volume 1 Fix Pack 21 ISO Volume 2 Fix Pack 21 ISO Volume 3 Fix Pack 21 ISO Volume 4	Download the Fix Pack 21. ISO images. You can burn these ISO images onto CDs. After downloading the files, you can run the <b>cksum</b> command against them. The output of the command should be as follows for each image: 571103366 623050752 u825483.v1.iso 3555790569 503545856 u825483.v2.iso 4029807956 643203072 u825483.v3.iso 918583131 460128256 u825483.v4.iso
Order Fix Pack 21 on CD-ROM	You may order the CD-ROM through the Delivery Service Center. The order site requires you to sign on with an IBM ID. You will receive the CD-ROM in several days.

Figure 125. Example list of fix packs

- 6. Download the ISO images to a Windows based laptop or PC. Use the images to create four installation CDs.
- Run the following command from the VIOS \$ prompt to verify the level of code currently existing on the blade. ioslevel



Figure 126. ioslevel

Note: The VIOS level must be at 2.1.0.0 or higher to load Fix Pack 21.

- **8**. Install the Fix Pack using normal installation procedures. Once the Fix Pack installation completes, reboot the blade.
- **9**. After Fix Pack 21 has been loaded and the blade has been rebooted, run the **ioslevel** command again from the VIOS \$ prompt to verify the code level.



Figure 127. ioslevle - FP21

# **Obtaining VIOS i-fixes and Verifying the Installation**

The following section shows how to obtain and install VIOS i-fix levels.

# About this task

For the most current information on supported VIOS i-fix, review the *IBM SAS RAID Module Interoperability Guide*.

## Procedure

1. Open a web browser to the following URL:

http://www14.software.ibm.com/webapp/set2/sas/f/vios/home.html This opens the Virtual I/O Server Support for Power Systems.

- 2. The host blade should be at the minimum levels documented in the *IBM SAS RAID Module Interoperability Guide*.
- 3. Follow the links to "Download the latest VIOS V2.1 Fix Pack "
- 4. Click on the link for the **VIOS Update package**.

VIOS Update package							
Package	ioslevel	Description					
Fix Pack 21	2.1.1.10	Fix Pack 21 provides fixes for Virtual VO Server Version 2.1.0. Applying this package upgrades the VIOS to the latest level. You must use the VIOS migration media to move to VIOS 2.1.0 from a lower level before you can apply this Fix Pack.					
		If your VIOS is already Version 2.1.0, you should upgrade to Fix Pack 21.					

Figure 128. VIOS update package

- 5. Search on this page for the latest i-fix. Download and install the i-fix using normal installation instructions.
- 6. Once all i-fix installations are completed, run the following command to verify the state of the i-fixes:

emgr −l

**Note:** All of the I-fixes should have a state of 'Q' for 'reboot required'. See the below figure.

# e	mgr −l									
ID	STATE	LABEL	INSTALL TIME	UPDATED BY	ABSTR	ACT				
1	*Q*	vios_rssm	07/01/09 23:53:17		Fixes	for	RSSM	storage	on	VIOS
STSMUGBHRTPZSSPZG	TE code = STABI = MOUN = UNMOI = REBO = BROKI = REMO = TESTI = NOT I = STAI = STAI = BOO = BOO = REMI	es; TED UNTED OT REQUIRED EN ALLING VING ED PATCHED BLE + PATCH BLE + NOT P T IMAGE MOD T IMAGE MOD OVING + REB	ED ATCHED IFIED + PATCHED IFIED + NOT PATCHEI OOT REQUIRED	D						

Figure 129. emgr –I command results

- 7. Reboot the blade.
- Once the blade comes back up, run the following commands to change the working directory and check the status of the i-fixes again. All of the i-fixes should have a state of 'S' for 'Stable'. See the example in the figure below. cd /usr/update/apars emgr -1

# e	# emgr -l									
ID	STATE	LABEL	INSTALL TIME	UPDATED BY	ABSTR	аст				
=== 1	===== S	vios_rssm	07/01/09 23:53:1	17	Fixes	for	RSSM	storage	on	VIOS
STANUQBIRTPRSPZQR	TE cod = STAB = MOUN = NOUN = REBO = BROK = INST = REMO = PATC = NOT = STA = BOO = BOO = REM	es: LE TED UNTED OT REQUIRED EN ALLING ED HED PATCHED BLE + PATCH BLE + NOT P T IMAGE MOD T IMAGE MOD OVING + REB	ED ATCHED IFIED + PATCHED IFIED + NOT PATCH OOT REQUIRED	ŧΕD						

Figure 130. emgr –I command results after reboot

# Obtaining the PS / JS (Power / System P) Host Blade BIOS and Verifying the Installation

The following shows an example version for the PS / JS (Power / System P) host blade BIOS.

## About this task

For the most current information on supported BIOS for PS / JS (Power / System P) host blades, review the *IBM SAS RAID Module Interoperability Guide*.

#### Procedure

1. Verify the existing level of firmware on the AIX blade. Open a terminal window on the AIX blade and enter lsmcode to display the current level. Press Enter to exit the screen.

```
<u>Window Edit Options</u>
DISPLAY MICROCODE LEVEL
IBM,7998-61X
The current permanent system firmware image is EA320_030
The current temporary system firmware image is EA320_030
The system is currently booted from the temporary firmware image.
Use Enter to continue.
```

Figure 131. Display the current firmware level on the AIX blade



Figure 132. Display the current firmware level on the AIX PS70x blade

 Open a web browse to the following URL: http://www.ibm.com/support/entry/portal/ Under #1. Select: Search for a product and Sort by relevance. Type in BladeCenter to search on Under #2. Select: Downloads Under #3. Select: View your page



Figure 133. Support Portal View

3. Select Fix Central on the next page.



Figure 134. Fix Central View

4. Select the following options from the corresponding lists that appear:

**Note:** When refining the search criteria, after Operating System selection, select "Ccontinue" to get to the next screen where additional search refinements can be selected.

For PS70x blades use the following search criteria

Product Family:	BladeCenter			
Туре:	BladeCenter PS700			
Model:	8406			
Operating System:	All			
Refine results:	BIOS			

**Note:** The BIOS level of code will be the same for all PS700 / PS701 /PS702 blades.

For all previous JS blades use the following search criteria

Product Family:	BladeCenter JS12
Туре:	7998
Model:	All models
Operating System:	All
Refine results:	BIOS

**Note:** The BIOS level of code will be the same for all JS12/JS22/JS23/JS43 blades.

5. Click Go next to the BIOS list to display a list of the most recently released code for this blade type.

	United States [ char	nge]
		Search
Home Solutions * Servio	es * Products * Support & downloads * My IBM *	Welcome [ IBM Sign in ] [ Register ]
← Return to IBM Support Portal	Fix Control	
Fix Central		
Supported products		
Enhancements	Fix Central provides fixes and updates for your system's software, hardware, and ope	rating BladeCenter support
Help	system.	I Support URL
Feedback	Select the product below. When using the keyboard to navigate the page, use the Alt a arrow keys to navigate the selection lists.	and down  Wiew BladeCenter products
	Product Group BladeCenter	
	Product	
	BladeCenter PS700	
	Product	
	0400 4	
	All	
	Continue	
About IBM Privacy Cont	act Terms of use Accessibility IBM Feeds Jobs	

Figure 135. Fix Central Search Criteria Example

6. Select Continue.



Figure 136. Selected fixes example

- 7. Select the aix\_ppc64 installation version:
- 8. Select Continue to open a download window.



Figure 137. Download options example

- 9. Select continue and agree to the terms and conditions.
- 10. Download the image and install script.

- 11. Save the file to the AIX host blade.
- 12. Install the BIOS by running the downloaded script.

Example for a JS blade

chmod +x ibm\_fw\_bios\_ea340\_075\_039\_aix\_ppc64.sh ./ibm\_fw\_bios\_ea340\_075\_039\_aix\_ppc64.sh Example for a PS70x blade chmod +x ibm\_fw\_bios\_aa710.088.043.aix\_ppc64.sh ./ibm fw bios aa710.088.043.aix ppc64.sh

**Note:** It may take a few minutes for the microcode to complete its up-grade. To view status of the Up-grade, open the AMM and navigate to the Blade Tasks -> Power/Restart menu:

**13.** Once installation completes and the blade reboots, run the lsmcode command again to verify the new level of BIOS.

**Note:** AIX boots from the temporary image. Therefore, only the temporary image has been updated.



Figure 138. AIX terminal window showing results of Ismcod command



Figure 139. PS70x AIX terminal window showing results of Ismcod command

# Installing SAS Integrated Controller Firmware for JS23/JS43 and PS700/PS701/PS702 Blades

This section describes how to install the SAS Integrated Controller firmware for JS23/JS43 and PS700/PS701/PS702 blades.

# Obtaining SAS Integrated Controller firmware for JS23/JS43 and PS700/PS701/PS702 blades

### About this task

For the most current information on supported firmware levels review the *IBM SAS RAID Module Interoperability Guide* at:

http://www.ibm.com/systems/support/supportsite.wss/ docdisplay?lndocid=MIGR-5078491&brandind=5000020

#### Procedure

1. Open a web browse to the following URL

http://www.ibm.com/support/entry/portal/

Under #1. Select: Search for a product and Sort by relevance.

Type in BladeCenter to search on

Under #2. Select: Downloads

Under #3. Select: View your page



Figure 140. Support and Downlaod example

2. Select Fix Central on the next page.



Figure 141. Fix central download example

3. Select the following options from the corresponding lists that appear:

Product Family:	BladeCenter (JS23/JS43 PS700/PS701/PS702)
Туре:	7778 / 8406
Operating System:	All
Refine results:	Component: SAS ( Serial Attached SCSI)

**Note:** The Integrated SAS Controller firmware level of code will be the same for JS23, JS43, PS700, PS701, and PS702 blades.

4. Click Go next to the Refine results list. This provides a list of recently released code for this blade type as shown in the following figure.



Figure 142. Example showing recent code updates for the selected blade type

 Click on the link provided for SAS Integrated Controller. A download screen will open as seen in the example below. Download the appropriate file to /usr/lib/microcode on the AIX host blade.

SAS Integrated Controller - IBM B	ladeCente	r JS12, JS22, JS23, JS43
Applicable countries and regions		
Supported systems:		
- IBM BladeCenter JS12 (7998) - IBM BladeCenter JS22 (7998) - IBM BladeCenter JS23 (7778) - IBM BladeCenter JS43 (7778)		
File details		
Version: V03200056 Release Date: 2009-07-17		
File link	File size	File description
pci.101402bd.20-03200056-1.aix5.1.noarch.rpm	1203505	pci.101402BD.20-03200056-1.aix5.1.noarch.rpm
pci.101402bd.20-03200056-1.linux.noarch.rpm	1203498	pci.101402BD.20-03200056-1.Linux.noarch.rpm
readme_sissas03200056.html	46344	README for SAS Integrated Controller on JS12, JS22, JS23, JS43

Figure 143. Example SAS Integrated Controller firmware download screen

- 6. From the /usr/lib/microcode directory on the AIX blade, enter ls –l pci\* to verify that the file was transferred.
- Unpack the .rpm file using the following command. rpm -ihv -ignoreos -force <file name>

# Activating the SAS Integrated Controller firmware

The following section shows how to activate the SAS Integrated Controller firmware

### Procedure

- 1. From the AIX terminal window, enter diag and press Enter to open the Diagnostics Operations application.
- 2. Press Enter.
- 3. Navigate to Task Selection and press Enter.
- 4. Navigate to Microcode Tasks and press Enter.
- 5. Navigate to Download Microcode and press Enter.
- 6. Navigate to /etc/microcode and press Enter.

Note: /etc/microcode is linked to /usr/lib/microcode.

7. Navigate to sissas0 and press Enter. A plus sign (+) appears next to the selection as shown below.

<u>Window E</u> dit Options		
RESOURCE SELECTION	I LIST	
From the list belo	ow, select any	number of resources by moving
the cursor to the	resource and p	pressing 'Enter'.
To cancel the sele	action, press '	Enter' again.
To list the suppo	[ted tasks for	the resource highlighted, press 'List'.
Once all selectior	ns have been ma	ade, press 'Commit'.
To avoid selecting	7 a resource, p	press 'Previous Menu'.
All Resources	ion will select	all the resources currently displayed.
This selecti	178A5.001.WIH0E	BAB-
mptsas0	P1-C6-T1	SAS Expansion Card (00105000)
+ <mark>Sissas0</mark>	P1-T5	PCI-X266 Planar 3Gb SAS Adapter
hdisk0	P1-D1	SAS Disk Drive (73400 MB)

Figure 144. Select the resource to apply the firmware

- 8. Press F7 to Commit.
- 9. Press Enter.
- 10. Select the level to install and press Enter.



Figure 145. A message appears indicating the firmware installed successfully

- 11. When the download completes, press Enter to continue.
- 12. Press F10 to exit the Diagnostics Operations application. No reboot is required.

# Verifying the installed firmware version

The following section shows how to verify the installed firmware version.

To verify the level of firmware installed, run the following command

```
# lscfg -vpl sissas0
sissas0 U78A5.001.WIH2A24-P1-T5 PCI-X266 Planar 3Gb SAS Adapter
ROM Level.(alterable).....03200065
Customer Card ID Number.....57D0
Hardware Location Code.....U78A5.001.WIH2A24-P1-T5
```

PLATFORM SPECIFIC

Name: pci1014,02BD Node: pci1014,02BD@1 Physical Location: U78A5.001.WIH2A24-P1-T5

# Installing the SAS Expansion Card Firmware for JS12 and JS22 blades

# Obtaining SAS integrated controller microcode firmware for JS12 and JS22 blades

#### About this task

For the most current information on supported firmware levels, review the *IBM SAS RAID Module Interoperability Guide*.

#### Procedure

1. Browse to the following URL

http://www.ibm.com/systems/support/supportsite.wss/ brandmain?brandind=5000020

2. Select the following options from the corresponding lists that appear:

Product Family:	BladeCenter JS22
Туре:	7998
Model:	All models

Operating System:	All listed operating systems
Refine results	Serial attached SCSI (SAS)

Note: The SAS level of code will be the same for JS12 and JS22 blades.

**3**. Click **Go** next to the **Refine results** list. This provides a list of recently released code for this blade type as shown in the following figure.

# Software and device drivers

BladeCenter JS22

Select your produc	et in the second se	Su	pport & downloads
Fields marked with	an asterisk (*) are required.	Ð	Download
Product family: *		0	Troubleshoot
BladeCenter JS22	2	· 2	Search
Type:			Documentation
All types		v 🎽	Documentation
Model:		683	Forums & Communities
All		~ Ê	Plan & upgrades
Operating system:		Eo	Install
All listed operating	systems	• 6	Use
	G		Open service request
		0	Assistance
+ Alternate downl	oad resources view		
Refine results:	Serial attached SCSI (SAS)		▼ 60
→ Having trouble d	ownloading a file from our site?		
Serial attached SCS	SI (SA S)		
SAS Expansion Card	(CFFv) Firmware for AIX - IBM BladeCenter		20 Nov 2008 v00105000.1004912584

Figure 146. Example showing recent code updates for the selected blade type

4. Click the link for the latest code update to display a download page. Figure 10.1.2 shows the download page for code update v00105000.1004912584.

### SAS Expansion Card (CFFv) Firmware for AIX - IBM BladeCenter

Applicable countries and regions		
Systems supported:		
- IBM BladeCenter JS12 (7998) - IBM BladeCenter JS21 (7988, 8844) - IBM BladeCenter JS22 (7998)		
File details		
Version: 00105000.1004912584 Release Date: 2008-11-20		
File link	File size	File description
00105000.1004912584	307200	SAS Expansion Card (CFFv) Firmware for AIX
<u>ibm fw mptsas bc-sasexp- 00105000.1004912584 aix.chq</u>	624	CHANGE HISTORY for SAS Expansion Card (CFFv) Firmware for AIX
ibm fw mptsas bc-sasexp- 00105000.1004912584 aix.txt	3707	README for SAS Expansion Card (CFFv) Firmware for AIX

Figure 147. Download page for code update v00105000.1004912584

- 5. Click the link for the SAS Expansion Card (CFFv) Firmware for AIX and download the file to /usr/lib/microcode.
- From the AIX blade desktop, open a terminal window and run the following command to change directory: cd /usr/lib/microcode

7. Enter ls –l and press Enter. You should see the file in the results that display.

<u>Window E</u> dit <u>C</u>	ptions		
-rr	1 root	system	888368 Jun 30 2007 ibmsis570B.img
-rrr	1 root	system	41472 Jun 30 2007 SXD10S
-rrr	1 root	system	31232 Jun 30 2007 sxfep
# 15 -1 total 13648			
-rw-r	1 root	svstem	307200 Jun 07 01:06 00105000.1004912584
-rrr	1 root	system	20176 Jun 30 2007 cx conc
-rrr	1 root	system	20768 Jun 30 2007 cx e conc
-rrr	1 root	system	28672 Oct 03 2007 cxpabios
-rrr	1 root	system	36864 Oct 03 2007 cxpafep
-r-xr-xr-x	1 bin	bin	99995 Jun 30 2007 dgr0871014d.00.00
-r-xr-xr-x	1 bin	bin	197089 Aug 23 2007 dgr0b91014d.00.00
-r-xr-xr-x	1 bin	bin	267973 Aug 23 2007 dgr0c91014d.00.00
-r-xr-xr-x	1 bin	bin	316207 Jun 30 2007 dgr0d31014d.00.00
-r-xr-xr-x	1 bin	bin	99095 Jun 30 2007 dgr0f81014d.00.00
-rr	1 bin	bin	74920 Aug 23 2007 ec8fd.00.03
-rr	1 root	system	1296532 Oct 03 2007 ibmsis2780.img
-rrr	1 root	system	894684 Jun 30 2007 ibmsis5702.img
-rrr	1 root	system	1254980 Jun 30 2007 ibmsis5703.img
-rr	1 root	system	1254980 Jun 30 2007 ibmsis5709.img
-rr	1 root	system	888368 Jun 30 2007 ibmsis570B.img
-rr	1 root	system	41472 Jun 30 2007 sxbios
-rr	1 root	system	31232 Jun 30 2007 sxfep
# 35		1768	

Figure 148. AIX terminal window showing results of Is -I command, including firmware file

# Activating the SAS Expansion Card firmware

The following section shows how to activate the SAS Expansion Card firmware.

#### Procedure

- 1. From the AIX terminal window, enter **diag** and press Enter to go to the Diagnostics Operations application.
- 2. Press Enter.
- 3. Navigate to Task Selection and press Enter.
- 4. Navigate to Microcode Tasks and press Enter.
- 5. Navigate to Download Latest Available Microcode and press Enter.
- 6. Navigate to /etc/microcode and press Enter.
- 7. Note: /etc/microcode is linked to /usr/lib/microcode.
- 8. Navigate to **mptsas0** and press Enter. A plus (+) sign appears next to **mptsas0** as shown in the following figure.

Window Edit Options			
DOWNLOAD LATEST A	VAILABLE MICROCO	DDE	
The following dev /etc/microcode. From the list belo the cursor to the To cancel the sel	ices have newer bw, select any p resource and p ection, press ')	microcode available on number of resources by r ressing 'Enter'. Enter' again.	moving
Make selection(s)	, use Commit to	continue.	
All Resources This select	ion will select J78A5.001.WIH072	all the resources curr	ently displayed.
+ mptsas0	P1-C6-T1	SAS Expansion Ca	rd (00105000)
F1=Help F3=Previous Menu	F4=List	F7=Commit	F10=Exit

Figure 149. Select the resource to apply the firmware

**9**. Press F7 to begin the update. When the installation completes, a message similar to the following figure.



Figure 150. Message indicating that the firmware installed successful

- 10. Press Enter to see a summary screen.
- 11. Press F10 to exit the Diagnostics Operations application. No reboot is required.

## Verifying the installed firmware version

To verify the level of firmware installed, run the following command.

# lscfg -vpl mptsas0
mptsas0 U78A5.001.WIH1970-P1-C10-T1 SAS Expansion Card (00105000)

ROM Level.(alterable).....1004912782 Device Specific.(Z0).....2701 Hardware Location Code.....U78A5.001.WIH1970-P1-C10-T1

PLATFORM SPECIFIC

Name: pci1000,50 Model: LSI,1064 Node: pci1000,5001 Physical Location: U78A5.001.WIH1970-P1-C10-T1

# Appendix A. Appendix A: Configuring a SAS HBA BIOS on x86-64 (Intel or AMD) host

The following section describes how to configure a SAS HBA BIOS on x86-64 (Intel or AMD) host.

This configuration is to allow for each host to perform error handing correctly when one of the SAS RAID Controller Modules has to be shutdown. This shutdown can occur during a failure condition, during concurrent code updates, or during user initiated service actions. It is required for proper operation that the following settings be applied to any System X host blade connected to an IBM BladeCenter S SAS RAID Controller Module.

#### Note:

- These configuration procedures are not required for PS/JS (Power/System p) host blades running AIX or VIOS.
- The following firmware versions shown in the figures are only for example, the current firmware may be at a later version.

For HS23/HS23E, you have to add the Legacy Only flag before configuring a SAS HBA BIOS on x86-64 (Intel or AMD) host.

To add the Legacy Only flag to the boot order list, complete the following steps:

- 1. Restart the server and press F1 to start the Setup utility.
- 2. Select Boot Manager.
- 3. Select Add Boot Option or Add WOL Boot Option.

	Boot Manager	
Primary Boot Sequence Add Boot Option Delete Boot Option Change Boot Order Secondary (VOL) Boot S Add WOL Boot Option Delete WOL Boot Option Change WOL Boot Order Boot From File	equence	Add EFI Application or Removable File System as Boot Option.
Reset System		d.
AT MOST IN A COMPANY	<enter>=Select Entru</enter>	Esc=Exit

Figure 151. Add boot option

4. Select **Legacy Only** and press Enter. The Legacy Only flag is added to the end of the boot order list.

Hard Disk 2 Hard Disk 3 Hard Disk 4		
USB Storage Diagnostics iSCSI iSCSI Critical Legacy Only Embedded Hypervisor		
11=Moue Highlight	<enter>=Select Entru</enter>	Esc=Exit

Figure 152. Legacy only

5. Select Change Boot Order or Change WOL Boot Order and press Enter.

Change the order	<cd dud="" rom=""> <hard 0="" disk=""> <elamou disk=""></elamou></hard></cd>	Change the order
Commit Changes	CD/DVD Rom Hard Disk 0 Floppy Disk PXE Network Legacy Only	
+ =Move Selection Up <fnter>=Confirm Change</fnter>	- =Move Selection Down	Esc=Exit Entry

Figure 153. Legacy only

- 6. Highlight **Legacy Only** and press + until the Legacy Only flag is above the first boot target to which the Legacy Only flag applies. Press **Enter**.
- 7. Select Commit Changes and press Enter.
- 8. Exit from the Setup utility.

Configuring a SAS HBA BIOS on x86-64 (Intel or AMD) host, complete the following steps:

1. Reboot the blade server.

The following two figures must be pressed to enter SAS configuration menu, are examples of the boot sequence. Ctlr-C must be pressed to enter the SAS 1064 configuration screen.

Note: Some blades will show only one "Searching for devices" line

Broadcom NetXtreme II Ethernet Boot Agent v3.4.8 Copyright (C) 2000-2007 Broadcom Corporation All rights reserved.

Broadcom NetXtreme II Ethernet Boot Agent v3.4.8 Copyright (C) 2000-2007 Broadcom Corporation All rights reserved.

LSI Corporation MPT SAS BIOS MPTBIOS-6.22.00.00 (2008.04.10) Copyright 2000-2008 LSI Corporation.

Searching for devices at HBA 0... Searching for devices at HBA 1...

Figure 154. Example Boot Screen



Figure 155. Screen where Ctrl-C must be pressed to enter SAS configuration menu

2. Enter the LSI Adapter BIOS configuration menu, by pressing the CTRL-C at the SAS configuration prompt during system boot. For blades with an enabled internal SAS planer and a SAS daughter card the screen will be similar to Screen where Ctrl-C must be pressed to enter SAS configuration menu figure. In Blade with Internal SAS Planer enabled and SAS Daughter card figure below, the external SAS daughter card is the top line, 'SAS3020XD'. The adapter name may vary depending on the particular blade model and daughter card version. To determine which line is for the external SAS daughter card the internal SAS planar can be temporarily disabled in by pressing F1 during boot. This will remove the internal SAS planer from the SAS configuration page, so that the remaining line will be for the SAS daughter card. HS20 and LS20 blade types will only have a single SAS entry by default because the internal hard

LSI Corp Config Uti Adapter List Globa	lity L Prope	v ertie	6.22. s	.00.00	(2008.04.	10)			
Adapter	PCI Bus	PCI Dev	PCI Fnc	PCI Slot	FW Revisi	on	Status	Boot Order	
SAS3020XD SAS1064	05 ( 02 (	01 00	00 00	01 00	1.24.81.0	10–1R 10–1r	Enabled Enabled	0	
									M
Esc = Exit Menu Alt+N = Global Prop	F1/9 erties	Shift -/+	+1 = = Alt	Help ter Boo	ot Order	Ins/De l	= Alter	Boot Li	st

drive is connected with SCSI and therefore there is no internal SAS planar.

Figure 156. Blade with Internal SAS Planer enabled and SAS Daughter card

**3**. Select the appropriate SAS adapter and press the Enter key to enter the card configuration page.



Figure 157. Setting Advanced Adapter Properties

4. Select 'Advanced Adapter Properties' and press enter to set the Block Device Timeout values. The following figure shows the setting values. The Timeout for Block Devices should be 30, all other timeout values on this page should be 10.

LSI Corp Config Utility v6.22.00.00 (2008.04.10 Advanced Device Properties SAS1064	)
Maximum INI 13 Devices for this Adapter	24
IO Timeout for Block Devices IO Timeout for Block Devices(Removable) IO Timeout for Sequential Devices IO Timeout for Other Devices	30 10 10 10
LUNs to Scan for Block Devices LUNs to Scan for Block Devices(Removable) LUNs to Scan for Sequential Devices LUNs to Scan for Other Devices	CALLD CALLD CALLD CALLD CALLD
Removable Media Support	ENone]
Restore Defaults	
Esc = Exit Menu F1/Shift+1 = Help Enter = Select Item -/+/Enter = Change Item	

Figure 158. Setting for Block Device Timeouts

5. Back out to the previous menu and select the 'Adapter Timing Properties' option.

LSI Corp Config Utilit Advanced Adapter Prope	y v6.22.00.0 erties SAS1064	9 (2008.04.10)
IRQ NVM IO Port Addr Chip Revisio Advanced Dev Adapter Tim PHY Properti	ress m ID vice Properties mg Properties es	09 Yes 4100 03
Esc = Exit Menu Enter = Select Item	F1/Shift+1 = Help -/+/Enter = Change	e Item

Figure 159. Selecting the Adpater Timing Properties menu option

- **6**. Edit the 'Adapter Timing Properties' for the specific operating system being configured.
  - a. For Linux, set the 'Report Device Missing Delay' to 30 and the 'I/O Device Missing Delay' to 30 in the 'Adapter Timing Properties' page as shown below.

LSI Corp Config Utility v6.22.00.00 (2008.0 Adapter Timing Properties SAS1064	84.10)
Direct Attached Spinup Delay (Secs) Direct Attached Max Targets to Spinup Expander Spinup Delay (Secs) Expander Max Target devices to Spinup	E 21 E 01 E 01 Francis E 01 F Znabia
Report Device Missing Delay	E 301
IO Device Missing Delay	E 303
Esc = Exit Menu F1/Shift+1 = Help	

Figure 160. SAS 1064 adapter timing properties for Linux

**Note:** For Blades using LSI SAS 2004 HBA (e.g. HS23 and HS23E), set the "Report Device Missing Delay" to 30 and the "IO Device Missing Delay" to 8 in the Adapter Timing Properties.

LSI Corp Config Utility v7.19 Adapter Timing Properties SAS200	.00.00 (2011.05.16) 04
Direct Attached Spinup Do Direct Attached Max Targ	elay (Secs) [ 2] ets to Spinup [ 2]
Report Device Missing De	lay [ 30]
To Device missing Deray	
Esc = Exit Menu	Help Change Item

Figure 161. SAS 2004 adapter timing properties for Linux

b. For Windows, set the 'Report Device Missing Delay' to 144 and the 'I/O Device Missing Delay' to 8 in the 'Adapter Timing Properties' page as shown below.
LSI Corp Config Utility v6.22.00.00 (2008.0 Adapter Timing Properties SAS1064	4.10)
Direct Attached Spinup Delay (Secs)	1.21
Direct Attached Max Targets to Spinup	[ 0]
Expander Spinup Delay (Secs)	[ 0]
Expander Max Target devices to Spinup	[ 0]
Report Device Missing Delay	[ 144]
IO Device Missing Delay	[ 8]
Esc = Exit Menu F1/Shift+1 = Help	

Figure 162. SAS 1064 Adapter timing properties for Windows

**Note:** For Blades using LSI SAS 2004 HBA (e.g. HS23 and HS23E), set the "Report Device Missing Delay" to 30 and the "IO Device Missing Delay" to 8 in the Adapter Timing Properties.

Adapter Timing Proper	ties SAS2004	
Direct Atta	ched Spinup Delay (Secs)	1 21
Direct Atta	ched Max Targets to Spinup	[2]
Report Devi	ce Missing Delay	[ 30]
IO Device M	issing Delay	[ 8]
Esc = Exit Menu Enter = Select Item	F1/Shift+1 = Help -/+/Enter = Change Item	

Figure 163. SAS 2004 Adapter timing properties for Windows

c. For VMware, set the 'Report Device Missing Delay' to 0 and the 'I/O Device Missing Delay' to 0 in the 'Adapter Timing Properties' page as shown below.

Adapter Timing Propert	ties SAS1064		
Direct Attac	ched Spinup Delay (Secs)	[2]	
Direct Attac	ched Max Targets to Spinup	E 03	
Expander Spi	inup Delay (Secs)	[ 0]	
Expander Max	arget devices to Spinup	[ 8]	
Report Devic	e Missing Delay	1.01	
IO Device M	issing Delay	C 0)	
Esc = Exit Menu	F1/Shift+1 = Help		

Figure 164. SAS Adapter timing properties for VMware

7. Use the ESC key to back out of the menus until asked to save the values, save them and then use the arrow keys to select the Exit the Configuration Utility and Reboot option, and press the enter key.



Figure 165. Saving the BIOS setting and rebooting

# Appendix B. Appendix B: SAS Boot Pre-Operating System Installation Activities

Complete the following steps to configure the IBM BladeCenter S SAS RAID Controller Module, the BC-S chassis and blade servers for installing a SAS booted operating system.

### Procedure

- Before proceeding with any of the steps in this section, make sure that the SAS RAID Controller Module has been updated to the latest firmware levels. Review the *IBM BladeCenter S SAS RAID Controller Module Installation and Users Guide* for information on how to update the firmware on the module. Review and perform, if required, the steps in the section titled "Prerequisites" on page 15.
- 2. If using a SAS Expansion Card, it is recommended to disable the onboard SAS controller. press F1 when prompted in the System X splash screen to get in the BIOS setup window to:
  - a. Disable the integrated/onboard SAS controller if you have SAS Expansion Card (CFFv) (39Y9190) installed.

**Note:** Do not disable the integrated/onboard SAS controller if you have IBM SAS Connectivity Card (CFFv) (43W3974) installed instead.

- b. If this blade server has a mapped boot volume (LUN) that was create from a pool with the SAS RAID Controller Module in bay 4 (option -port 1 when creating the pool in the CLI) as the preferred owner, do not change the hard drive boot order. If the boot volume was mapped as LUN 0, use hd0 as the boot drive in the blade server boot sequence no matter which SAS RAID Controller Module is the preferred owner.
- c. Save the new BIOS settings before exiting the Configuration/Setup utility. Repeat this step for each blade server that has boot logical drives/LUNs defined in the boot disk system.
- **3**. Modify the SAS Adapter Timing Properties. To change these settings, refer to Appendix A, "Appendix A: Configuring a SAS HBA BIOS on x86-64 (Intel or AMD) host," on page 147.
- 4. Use the IBM Storage Configuration Manager (SCM) program or the SAS RAID Controller Module Command Line Interface (CLI), create at least one volume (boot volume) for each blade server in the BC-S chassis. Observe the following guidelines when creating the boot volume:
  - a. Ensure that the volume that is used as the boot volume is big enough to contain the operating system and its swap space and any application code.
  - b. For Linux, it is assumed that the root volume and the swap partition are located in the same boot volume.
  - **c.** For Linux, it is recommended that the swap device be at least the size of the physical memory that is configured in the blade server.
  - d. The boot volume must be mapped to the blade server as LUN 0.
  - e. For protection against disk failure, the boot volume should be part of RAID 1, 10 or 5 storage pools. Note: It is possible to use a RAID 0 pool for a boot volume however this is not recommended due to the potential risk of single disk failure without redundancy.

- f. Though it is possible to create the boot and data volumes for all the server blades in a BladeCenter S Chassis as part of the same RAID storage pool, it is recommended to split the boot and data volumes using separate RAID storage pools where one pool has the SAS RAID Controller Module in bay 3 as the preferred owner and the other pool has the SAS RAID Module in bay 4 as the preferred owner.
- g. At this time in the remote SAS boot configuration process you should create only the boot volume to which the host will be mapped in order to ensure that the operating system, swap space, applications, and application data are stored in the same volume. After completing this process you can create and map additional volumes to this host. Refer to section "Host attachment path considerations" on page 12 for total number of volumes that can be mapped to a host. If volumes other than the boot volume are created, do not map the additional volumes to the blade server SAS ports at this time. You can create the additional volumes and map them to the blade server as part of the post operating system installation activities.
- 5. Map this boot volume to only one of the blade server SAS ports as LUN 0. If the BIOS sees the same boot volume on multiple paths, it will present two available disks that can be used for OS installation. Because the BIOS will present the volumes in the order that it scans, if the volumes are not scanned in the same order every time the blade server reboots, one might get a "boot device not found" error when rebooting the blade server.
- 6. If not using SCM, the WWPN of the blade server SAS port can be obtained by making a telnet connection into the SAS switch component of the SAS RAID Controller Module and performing a "sasport status all" command. For example, in the command output below, the WWPN of the SAS port in blade server 1 is **"500062B0000D7A10**".

**Note:** The blade servers must be powered on and reach the MPT SAS BIOS and firmware loading point before the SAS switch can discover the SAS card WWPN. It is recommended that the Ctrl+C keys be pressed during the MPT SAS BIOS loading to enter the LSI Corp Config Utility and to stop the blade server from booting further. Once the SAS WWNs are recorded and the boot volume is configured and mapped to the appropriate SAS WWNs, one can restart the blade server to start the operating system installation.

===	IBM BladeCenter(R) SAS RAID	Controller Modul	e ===	
Login: USERID				
Pas	sword: *******			
USE	RID logged on			
MAI	N> sasport status all			
ID	SAS Port Name	SAS Address	Enable 1	Flt Status
	+	+	++	+
EI	External Port 1	Tr	ue OII	NoCable
	PHY IC	000000000000000000000000000000000000000	True	NoCable
	PHY ID	00000000000000000	True	Nocable
	PHY IE	00000000000000000	True	NoCable
	PHY IF	000000000000000000000000000000000000000	True	NOCADIE
EZ	External Port 2	Tr	ue OII	NoCable
	PHY 20	000000000000000000000000000000000000000	True	NoCable
	PHY 21	000000000000000000000000000000000000000	True	NoCable
	PHY 22	000000000000000000000000000000000000000	True	NoCable
	PHY 23	000000000000000000000000	True	NoCable
E3	External Port 3	Tr	ue Off	Normal
	PHY 00	000000000000000000000000000000000000000	True	Normal
	PHY 01	000000000000000000000000000000000000000	True	Normal
	PHY 02	000000000000000000000000000000000000000	True	Normal
	PHY 03	000000000000000000000000000000000000000	True	Normal
E4	External Port 4	Tr	ue Off	NoCable
	PHY 04	000000000000000000000000000000000000000	True	NoCable
	PHY 05	000000000000000000000000000000000000000	True	NoCable
	PHY 06	000000000000000000000000000000000000000	True	NoCable
	PHY 07	000000000000000000000000000000000000000	True	NoCable
B1	Blade Slot Connection 1	Tr	ue Off	Normal
	PHY 1B	500062B0000D7A10	True	Normal
B2	Blade Slot Connection 2	Tr	ue Off	Normal
	PHY 1A	500062B00007CD84	True	Normal
B3	Blade Slot Connection 3	Tr	ue Off	Normal
	РНҮ 19	500062B0000D79F4	True	Normal
B4	Blade Slot Connection 4	Tr	ue Off	Normal
	PHY 18	500062B00007E6DC	True	Normal
B5	Blade Slot Connection 5	Tr	ue Off	NoCable
	PHY 17	000000000000000000000000000000000000000	True	NoCable
B6	Blade Slot Connection 6	Tr	ue Off	Normal
	PHY 16	500062B00007E6E0	True	Normal
B7	RAID HA Connection	Tr	ue Off	Normal
	PHY OA	5005076B07418C20	True	Normal
	PHY 09	5005076B07418C20	True	Normal
	PHY 08	5005076B07418C20	True	Normal
	PHY OF	5005076B07418C20	True	Normal
	++	+	+	+
ID	SAS Port Name SA	S Address En	able Flt	Status

Figure 166. sasport status all command output

**Note:** When the boot volume is created, it can be created in the pool that is preferentially owned by the SAS RAID Controller Module in bay 3 (-port 0 option when creating the pool) or in the pool that is preferentially owned by the SAS RAID Controller Module in bay 4 (-port 1 option when creating the pool. Regardless of the preferred owner setting, it is recommended to always use the WWPN of the SAS port that is shown in the "sasport status all" of the SAS switch in bay 3 (the first SAS port of the SAS card adapter) for the initial OS installation. The first SAS port of a two port SAS card adapter will always have the WWPN be one less than the WWPN of the second adapter. For example, if the first SAS port WWPN is "500062B0000D7A10", the second SAS port WWPN will be "500062B0000D7A11".

7. Once the boot volume is mapped to the SAS port in the blade server, one should see the volume displayed when the MPT SAS BIOS completes the scan for devices as shown below.

Copyright (C) 2000-2007 Broadcom C All rights reserved.	Corporation			
LSI Corporation MPT SAS BIOS MPTBIOS-6.22.00.00 (2008.04.10) Copyright 2000-2008 LSI Corporatio Searching for devices at HBA 0	on.			
Searching for devices at HBA 1				
SLOT ID LUN VENDOR PRODUCT	REVISION	INT13 SI	ZE 🚿	NV
1 2 0 TNN 1020H00	1676	Boot	30	GB
T 2 0 10M 1020N00		to the second second second		
1 LSILogic SAS1064-IR	1.25.80.00	NV 2D:0	6	

Figure 167. MPT SAS BIOS device scan result

8. If there is an internal hard drive installed in the blade server, it is recommended to remove it before installing the operating system on the SAS RAID Controller Module boot volume.

# Appendix C. Appendix C: Procedure for MPTSAS FW upgrade of HS12, HS21-XM, HS21, HS22, HS22V, HX5 and LS20 blades

### About this task

The installation of LSI SAS firmware 2.71 or later, when coming from a firmware level less than 2.71 requires modification of the host LUN mappings on the SAS RAID Controller Module prior to installing the firmware on the blade. This new version of firmware will change the World Wide Names (WWNs) that are presented to the SAS switch of the SAS RAID Controller Module. On a local booted blade (OS installed on internal drive) the new firmware will add 0x01 to the WWNs. On a SAS booted blade, with no internal drive present, the new firmware will add 0x02 to the current WWNs. Therefore prior to the installation of the new LSI SAS firmware on a HS12, HS21-XM, HS21, HS22, HS22V, HX5 and LS20 blades the system administrator needs create new host LUN mappings with the new WWN.

Example of WWN changes with SAS boot:

Prior to installation the WWNs are 5005076B08801D6E & 5005076B08801D6F. After installation of the 2.71 firmware the WWNs will become 5005076B08801D70 & 5005076B08801D71.

Example of WWN changes with local boot:

Prior to installation the WWNs are 5005076B08801D6F & 5005076B08801D70. After installation of the 2.71 firmware the WWNs will become 5005076B08801D70 & 5005076B08801D71.

Before installing the 2.71 firmware the system administrator must add new mappings of the current LUNs to the future WWNs that will be presented to the SAS switch. This can be done using either the CLI or the SCM. The following example uses the CLI commands.

CLI Procedure: Using SAS boot HS22(type 7870)

### Procedure

1. Determine what the new WWNs will be. SAS booted – add 0x02 to the current WWNs.

Current WWN: 5005076B08801D6E & 5005076B08801D6F New WWN: 5005076B08801D70 & 5005076B08801D71

2. Get current host LUN mappings.

<CLI> hostlun -get -wwn 5005076B08801D6E HostWWN 5005076b08801d6e, HostName: LUNs Mapped :

LUN	Permission	Volume
0	ACCESS READWRITE	raid0:sasbootvol01
11	ACCESS_READWRITE	raid0:vol04
12	ACCESS READWRITE	raid0:vol10
13	ACCESS READWRITE	raid0:vol16
14	ACCESS READWRITE	raid0:vol22
6	ACCESS READWRITE	raid1:vol04
7	ACCESS_READWRITE	raid1:vol10
8	ACCESS READWRITE	raid1:vol16
9	ACCESS READWRITE	raid1:vol22
10	ACCESS READWRITE	raid1:vol28
15	ACCESS_READWRITE	raid5:vol31
1	ACCESS READWRITE	raid5:vol04
2	ACCESS READWRITE	raid5:vol10
3	ACCESS READWRITE	raid5:vol16
4	ACCESS READWRITE	raid5:vol22
5	ACCESS READWRITE	raid5:vol28

Figure 168. LUNs Mapped

3. Map existing LUNs to new WWN.

 <CLI> hostlun -map -volume raid<br/>0:sasbootvol<br/>01 -wwn 5005076 B08801<br/>D70 -lun $\mathbf{0}$ 

 <CLI> hostlun -map -volume raid<br/>0:sasbootvol<br/>01 -wwn 5005076 B08801<br/>D71 -lun $\scriptstyle 0$ 

4. Repeat for each LUN mapped to the blade which will receive the firmware update.

<CLI>hostlun -map -volume raid5:vol31 -wwn 5005076B08801D70 -lun 15 <CLI>hostlun -map -volume raid5:vol31 -wwn 5005076B08801D71 -lun 15

5. Verify Mapping to new WWNs.

<CLI>hostlun -get -wwn 5005076B08801D70 HostWWN 5005076b08801d70, HostName :

LUNs Mapped :

LUN	Permission	Volume
0	ACCESS_READWRITE	raid0:sasbootvol01
11	ACCESS_READWRITE	raid0:vol04
12	ACCESS_READWRITE	raid0:vol10
13	ACCESS READWRITE	raid0:vol16
14	ACCESS READWRITE	raid0:vol22
6	ACCESS READWRITE	raid1:vol04
7	ACCESS READWRITE	raid1:vol10
8	ACCESS_READWRITE	raid1:vol16
9	ACCESS READWRITE	raid1:vol22
10	ACCESS_READWRITE	raid1:vol28
15	ACCESS READWRITE	raid5:vol31
1	ACCESS READWRITE	raid5:vol04
2	ACCESS READWRITE	raid5:vol10
3	ACCESS READWRITE	raid5:vol16
4	ACCESS READWRITE	raid5:vol22
5	ACCESS READWRITE	raid5:vol28

Figure 169. LUNs Mapped

<CLI>hostlun -get -wwn 5005076B08801D71 HostWWN 5005076b08801d71, HostName : LUNs Mapped :

LUN	Permission	Volume
0	ACCESS READWRITE	raid0:sasbootvol01
11	ACCESS READWRITE	raid0:vol04
12	ACCESS READWRITE	raid0:vol10
13	ACCESS READWRITE	raid0:vol16
14	ACCESS READWRITE	raid0:vol22
6	ACCESS READWRITE	raid1:vol04
7	ACCESS READWRITE	raid1:vol10
8	ACCESS READWRITE	raid1:vol16
9	ACCESS READWRITE	raid1:vol22
10	ACCESS_READWRITE	raid1:vol28
15	ACCESS_READWRITE	raid5:vol31
1	ACCESS_READWRITE	raid5:vol04
2	ACCESS_READWRITE	raid5:vol10
3	ACCESS_READWRITE	raid5:vol16
4	ACCESS_READWRITE	raid5:vol22
5	ACCESS_READWRITE	raid5:vol28

#### Figure 170. LUNs Mapped

6. Install new mptsas firmware ibm\_fw\_mptsas\_hs22-2.71\_linux\_32-64. After install the new WWNs will be in use.

**Note:** Appendix B, "Appendix B: SAS Boot Pre-Operating System Installation Activities," on page 157 describes how to obtain the WWNs for a blade in the BC-S chassis.

# Appendix D. Getting help and technical assistance

If you need help, service, or technical assistance or just want more information about IBM products, you will find a wide variety of sources available from IBM to assist you.

Use this information to obtain additional information about IBM and IBM products, determine what to do if you experience a problem with your IBM system or optional device, and determine whom to call for service, if it is necessary.

### Before you call

Before you call, make sure that you have taken these steps to try to solve the problem yourself.

If you believe that you require IBM to perform warranty service on your IBM product, the IBM service technicians will be able to assist you more efficiently if you prepare before you call.

- Check all cables to make sure that they are connected.
- Check the power switches to make sure that the system and any optional devices are turned on.
- Check for updated software, firmware, and operating-system device drivers for your IBM product. The IBM Warranty terms and conditions state that you, the owner of the IBM product, are responsible for maintaining and updating all software and firmware for the product (unless it is covered by an additional maintenance contract). Your IBM service technician will request that you upgrade your software and firmware if the problem has a documented solution within a software upgrade.
- If you have installed new hardware or software in your environment, check http://www.ibm.com/systems/info/x86servers/serverproven/compat/us to make sure that the hardware and software is supported by your IBM product.
- Go to http://www.ibm.com/supportportal to check for information to help you solve the problem.
- Gather the following information to provide to IBM Support. This data will help IBM Support quickly provide a solution to your problem and ensure that you receive the level of service for which you might have contracted.
  - Hardware and Software Maintenance agreement contract numbers, if applicable
  - Machine type number (IBM 4-digit machine identifier)
  - Model number
  - Serial number
  - Current system UEFI and firmware levels
  - Other pertinent information such as error messages and logs
- Go to http://www.ibm.com/support/entry/portal/Open\_service\_request to submit an Electronic Service Request. Submitting an Electronic Service Request will start the process of determining a solution to your problem by making the pertinent information available to IBM Support quickly and efficiently. IBM service technicians can start working on your solution as soon as you have completed and submitted an Electronic Service Request.

You can solve many problems without outside assistance by following the troubleshooting procedures that IBM provides in the online help or in the documentation that is provided with your IBM product. The documentation that comes with IBM systems also describes the diagnostic tests that you can perform. Most systems, operating systems, and programs come with documentation that contains troubleshooting procedures and explanations of error messages and error codes. If you suspect a software problem, see the documentation for the operating system or program.

### Using the documentation

Information about your IBM system and preinstalled software, if any, or optional device is available in the documentation that comes with the product. That documentation can include printed documents, online documents, readme files, and help files.

See the troubleshooting information in your system documentation for instructions for using the diagnostic programs. The troubleshooting information or the diagnostic programs might tell you that you need additional or updated device drivers or other software. IBM maintains pages on the World Wide Web where you can get the latest technical information and download device drivers and updates. To access these pages, go to http://www.ibm.com/supportportal.

### Getting help and information from the World Wide Web

Up-to-date information about IBM products and support is available on the World Wide Web.

On the World Wide Web, up-to-date information about IBM systems, optional devices, services, and support is available at http://www.ibm.com/supportportal. IBM System x information is at http://www.ibm.com/systems/x. IBM BladeCenter information is at http://www.ibm.com/systems/bladecenter/. IBM IntelliStation information is at http://www.ibm.com/systems/intellistation.

### How to send DSA data to IBM

Use the IBM Enhanced Customer Data Repository to send diagnostic data to IBM.

Before you send diagnostic data to IBM, read the terms of use at http://www.ibm.com/de/support/ecurep/terms.html.

You can use any of the following methods to send diagnostic data to IBM:

- Standard upload: http://www.ibm.com/de/support/ecurep/send\_http.html
- Standard upload with the system serial number: <a href="http://www.ecurep.ibm.com/app/upload\_hw">http://www.ecurep.ibm.com/app/upload\_hw</a>
- Secure upload: http://www.ibm.com/de/support/ecurep/ send\_http.html#secure
- Secure upload with the system serial number: <a href="https://www.ecurep.ibm.com/app/upload\_hw">https://www.ecurep.ibm.com/app/upload\_hw</a>

### Creating a personalized support web page

You can create a personalized support web page by identifying IBM products that are of interest to you.

To create a personalized support web page, go to http://www.ibm.com/support/ mynotifications. From this personalized page, you can subscribe to weekly email notifications about new technical documents, search for information and downloads, and access various administrative services.

### Software service and support

Through IBM Support Line, you can get telephone assistance, for a fee, with usage, configuration, and software problems with your IBM products.

For more information about Support Line and other IBM services, see http://www.ibm.com/services or see http://www.ibm.com/planetwide for support telephone numbers. In the U.S. and Canada, call 1-800-IBM-SERV (1-800-426-7378).

### Hardware service and support

You can receive hardware service through your IBM reseller or IBM Services.

To locate a reseller authorized by IBM to provide warranty service, go to http://www.ibm.com/partnerworld/ and click **Find Business Partners** on the right side of the page. For IBM support telephone numbers, see http://www.ibm.com/planetwide . In the U.S. and Canada, call 1-800-IBM-SERV (1-800-426-7378).

In the U.S. and Canada, hardware service and support is available 24 hours a day, 7 days a week. In the U.K., these services are available Monday through Friday, from 9 a.m. to 6 p.m.

### IBM Taiwan product service

Use this information to contact IBM Taiwan product service.

台灣 IBM 產品服務聯絡方式: 台灣國際商業機器股份有限公司 台北市松仁路7號3樓 電話:0800-016-888

IBM Taiwan product service contact information:

IBM Taiwan Corporation 3F, No 7, Song Ren Rd. Taipei, Taiwan Telephone: 0800-016-888

# Notices

This information was developed for products and services offered in the U.S.A.

IBM may not offer the products, services, or features discussed in this document in other countries. Consult your local IBM representative for information on the products and services currently available in your area. Any reference to an IBM product, program, or service is not intended to state or imply that only that IBM product, program, or service may be used. Any functionally equivalent product, program, or service that does not infringe any IBM intellectual property right may be used instead. However, it is the user's responsibility to evaluate and verify the operation of any non-IBM product, program, or service.

IBM may have patents or pending patent applications covering subject matter described in this document. The furnishing of this document does not give you any license to these patents. You can send license inquiries, in writing, to:

IBM Director of Licensing IBM Corporation North Castle Drive Armonk, NY 10504-1785 U.S.A.

INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MACHINES CORPORATION PROVIDES THIS PUBLICATION "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Some states do not allow disclaimer of express or implied warranties in certain transactions, therefore, this statement may not apply to you.

This information could include technical inaccuracies or typographical errors. Changes are periodically made to the information herein; these changes will be incorporated in new editions of the publication. IBM may make improvements and/or changes in the product(s) and/or the program(s) described in this publication at any time without notice.

Any references in this information to non-IBM websites are provided for convenience only and do not in any manner serve as an endorsement of those websites. The materials at those websites are not part of the materials for this IBM product, and use of those websites is at your own risk.

IBM may use or distribute any of the information you supply in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you.

### Trademarks

IBM, the IBM logo, and ibm.com are trademarks of International Business Machines Corp., registered in many jurisdictions worldwide. Other product and service names might be trademarks of IBM or other companies.

A current list of IBM trademarks is available on the web at http://www.ibm.com/legal/copytrade.shtml.

Adaptec and HostRAID are trademarks of Adaptec, Inc., in the United States, other countries, or both.

Adobe and PostScript are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.

Cell Broadband Engine is a trademark of Sony Computer Entertainment, Inc., in the United States, other countries, or both and is used under license therefrom.

Intel, Intel Xeon, Itanium, and Pentium are trademarks or registered trademarks of Intel Corporation or its subsidiaries in the United States and other countries.

Java and all Java-based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Linux is a registered trademark of Linus Torvalds in the United States, other countries, or both.

Microsoft, Windows, and Windows NT are trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States, other countries, or both.

Red Hat, the Red Hat "Shadow Man" logo, and all Red Hat-based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Red Hat, Inc., in the United States and other countries.

UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group in the United States and other countries.

Other company, product, or service names may be trademarks or service marks of others.

### Important notes

Processor speed indicates the internal clock speed of the microprocessor; other factors also affect application performance.

CD or DVD drive speed is the variable read rate. Actual speeds vary and are often less than the possible maximum.

When referring to processor storage, real and virtual storage, or channel volume, KB stands for 1024 bytes, MB stands for 1,048,576 bytes, and GB stands for 1,073,741,824 bytes.

When referring to hard disk drive capacity or communications volume, MB stands for 1,000,000 bytes, and GB stands for 1,000,000 bytes. Total user-accessible capacity can vary depending on operating environments.

Maximum internal hard disk drive capacities assume the replacement of any standard hard disk drives and population of all hard disk drive bays with the largest currently supported drives that are available from IBM.

Maximum memory might require replacement of the standard memory with an optional memory module.

Each solid-state memory cell has an intrinsic, finite number of write cycles that the cell can incur. Therefore, a solid-state device has a maximum number of write cycles that it can be subjected to, expressed as "total bytes written" (TBW). A device that has exceeded this limit might fail to respond to system-generated commands or might be incapable of being written to. IBM is not responsible for replacement of a device that has exceeded its maximum guaranteed number of program/erase cycles, as documented in the Official Published Specifications for the device.

IBM makes no representation or warranties regarding non-IBM products and services that are ServerProven<sup>®</sup>, including but not limited to the implied warranties of merchantability and fitness for a particular purpose. These products are offered and warranted solely by third parties.

IBM makes no representations or warranties with respect to non-IBM products. Support (if any) for the non-IBM products is provided by the third party, not IBM.

Some software might differ from its retail version (if available) and might not include user manuals or all program functionality.

### Particulate contamination

Attention: Airborne particulates (including metal flakes or particles) and reactive gases acting alone or in combination with other environmental factors such as humidity or temperature might pose a risk to the device that is described in this document.

Risks that are posed by the presence of excessive particulate levels or concentrations of harmful gases include damage that might cause the device to malfunction or cease functioning altogether. This specification sets forth limits for particulates and gases that are intended to avoid such damage. The limits must not be viewed or used as definitive limits, because numerous other factors, such as temperature or moisture content of the air, can influence the impact of particulates or environmental corrosives and gaseous contaminant transfer. In the absence of specific limits that are set forth in this document, you must implement practices that maintain particulate and gas levels that are consistent with the protection of human health and safety. If IBM determines that the levels of particulates or gases in your environment have caused damage to the device, IBM may condition provision of repair or replacement of devices or parts on implementation of appropriate remedial measures to mitigate such environmental contamination. Implementation of such remedial measures is a customer responsibility.

Contaminant	Limits
Particulate	<ul> <li>The room air must be continuously filtered with 40% atmospheric dust spot efficiency (MERV 9) according to ASHRAE Standard 52.2<sup>1</sup>.</li> </ul>
	• Air that enters a data center must be filtered to 99.97% efficiency or greater, using high-efficiency particulate air (HEPA) filters that meet MIL-STD-282.
	• The deliquescent relative humidity of the particulate contamination must be more than 60% <sup>2</sup> .
	• The room must be free of conductive contamination such as zinc whiskers.
Gaseous	• Copper: Class G1 as per ANSI/ISA 71.04-1985 <sup>3</sup>
	• Silver: Corrosion rate of less than 300 Å in 30 days
<sup>1</sup> ASHRAE 52.2-20 <i>Efficiency by Partic</i> Air-Conditioning	08 - Method of Testing General Ventilation Air-Cleaning Devices for Removal le Size. Atlanta: American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Engineers, Inc.
<sup>2</sup> The deliquescent which the dust ab	relative humidity of particulate contamination is the relative humidity at sorbs enough water to become wet and promote ionic conduction.
<sup>3</sup> ANSI/ISA-71.04-	1985. Environmental conditions for process measurement and control systems:

Airborne contaminants. Instrument Society of America, Research Triangle Park, North

Table 5. Limits for particulates and gases

Carolina, U.S.A.

### **Documentation format**

The publications for this product are in Adobe Portable Document Format (PDF) and should be compliant with accessibility standards. If you experience difficulties when you use the PDF files and want to request a web-based format or accessible PDF document for a publication, direct your mail to the following address:

Information Development IBM Corporation 205/A015 3039 E. Cornwallis Road P.O. Box 12195 Research Triangle Park, North Carolina 27709-2195 U.S.A.

In the request, be sure to include the publication part number and title.

When you send information to IBM, you grant IBM a nonexclusive right to use or distribute the information in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you.

### **Telecommunication regulatory statement**

This product may not be certified in your country for connection by any means whatsoever to interfaces of public telecommunications networks. Further certification may be required by law prior to making any such connection. Contact an IBM representative or reseller for any questions.

### **Electronic emission notices**

When you attach a monitor to the equipment, you must use the designated monitor cable and any interference suppression devices that are supplied with the monitor.

# Federal Communications Commission (FCC) statement

**Note:** This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference, in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at his own expense.

Properly shielded and grounded cables and connectors must be used in order to meet FCC emission limits. IBM is not responsible for any radio or television interference caused by using other than recommended cables and connectors or by unauthorized changes or modifications to this equipment. Unauthorized changes or modifications could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that might cause undesired operation.

### Industry Canada Class A emission compliance statement

This Class A digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.

### Avis de conformité à la réglementation d'Industrie Canada

Cet appareil numérique de la classe A est conforme à la norme NMB-003 du Canada.

### Australia and New Zealand Class A statement

**Attention:** This is a Class A product. In a domestic environment this product may cause radio interference in which case the user may be required to take adequate measures.

### **European Union EMC Directive conformance statement**

This product is in conformity with the protection requirements of EU Council Directive 2004/108/EC on the approximation of the laws of the Member States relating to electromagnetic compatibility. IBM cannot accept responsibility for any failure to satisfy the protection requirements resulting from a nonrecommended modification of the product, including the fitting of non-IBM option cards.

**Attention:** This is an EN 55022 Class A product. In a domestic environment this product may cause radio interference in which case the user may be required to take adequate measures.

Responsible manufacturer:

International Business Machines Corp. New Orchard Road Armonk, New York 10504 914-499-1900

European Community contact:

IBM Deutschland GmbH Technical Regulations, Department M372 IBM-Allee 1, 71139 Ehningen, Germany Telephone: +49 7032 15 2941 Email: lugi@de.ibm.com

# **Germany Class A statement**

#### Deutschsprachiger EU Hinweis: Hinweis für Geräte der Klasse A EU-Richtlinie zur Elektromagnetischen Verträglichkeit

Dieses Produkt entspricht den Schutzanforderungen der EU-Richtlinie 2004/108/EG zur Angleichung der Rechtsvorschriften über die elektromagnetische Verträglichkeit in den EU-Mitgliedsstaaten und hält die Grenzwerte der EN 55022 Klasse A ein.

Um dieses sicherzustellen, sind die Geräte wie in den Handbüchern beschrieben zu installieren und zu betreiben. Des Weiteren dürfen auch nur von der IBM empfohlene Kabel angeschlossen werden. IBM übernimmt keine Verantwortung für die Einhaltung der Schutzanforderungen, wenn das Produkt ohne Zustimmung der IBM verändert bzw. wenn Erweiterungskomponenten von Fremdherstellern ohne Empfehlung der IBM gesteckt/eingebaut werden.

EN 55022 Klasse A Geräte müssen mit folgendem Warnhinweis versehen werden: "Warnung: Dieses ist eine Einrichtung der Klasse A. Diese Einrichtung kann im Wohnbereich Funk-Störungen verursachen; in diesem Fall kann vom Betreiber verlangt werden, angemessene Maßnahmen zu ergreifen und dafür aufzukommen."

# Deutschland: Einhaltung des Gesetzes über die elektromagnetische Verträglichkeit von Geräten

Dieses Produkt entspricht dem "Gesetz über die elektromagnetische Verträglichkeit von Geräten (EMVG)". Dies ist die Umsetzung der EU-Richtlinie 2004/108/EG in der Bundesrepublik Deutschland.

### Zulassungsbescheinigung laut dem Deutschen Gesetz über die elektromagnetische Verträglichkeit von Geräten (EMVG) (bzw. der EMC EG Richtlinie 2004/108/EG) für Geräte der Klasse A

Dieses Gerät ist berechtigt, in Übereinstimmung mit dem Deutschen EMVG das EG-Konformitätszeichen - CE - zu führen.

Verantwortlich für die Einhaltung der EMV Vorschriften ist der Hersteller:

International Business Machines Corp. New Orchard Road Armonk, New York 10504 914-499-1900

Der verantwortliche Ansprechpartner des Herstellers in der EU ist:

IBM Deutschland GmbH Technical Regulations, Abteilung M372 IBM-Allee 1, 71139 Ehningen, Germany Telephone: +49 7032 15 2941 Email: lugi@de.ibm.com

#### Generelle Informationen:

Das Gerät erfüllt die Schutzanforderungen nach EN 55024 und EN 55022 Klasse A.

# Japan VCCI Class A statement

この装置は、クラスA情報技術装置です。この装置を家庭環境で使用する と電波妨害を引き起こすことがあります。この場合には使用者が適切な対策 を講ずるよう要求されることがあります。 VCCI-A

This is a Class A product based on the standard of the Voluntary Control Council for Interference (VCCI). If this equipment is used in a domestic environment, radio interference may occur, in which case the user may be required to take corrective actions.

# Korea Communications Commission (KCC) statement

This is electromagnetic wave compatibility equipment for business (Type A). Sellers and users need to pay attention to it. This is for any areas other than home.

## **Russia Electromagnetic Interference (EMI) Class A statement**

ВНИМАНИЕ! Настоящее изделие относится к классу А. В жилых помещениях оно может создавать радиопомехи, для снижения которых необходимы дополнительные меры

# People's Republic of China Class A electronic emission statement

中华人民共和国"A类"警告声明



# **Taiwan Class A compliance statement**

警告使用者: 這是甲類的資訊產品,在 居住的環境中使用時,可 能會造成射頻干擾,在這 種情況下,使用者會被要 求採取某些適當的對策。

# Index

### **Numerics**

6.1 114

# Α

accessible documentation 173 activate SAS Expansion Card firmware 145 SAS Integrated Controller firmware 141 AIX 11, 105, 106, 110 AIX APARs 117 AIX, status 119 AIX 6.1 114 AIX installation 110 AIX service pack code 114 AIX/VIOS 107 Appendix A 147 Appendix B 157 Appendix C 161 assistance, getting 165 attach 51 host blade 85 system P host blade 105 attach, host blade 85 Australia Class A statement 174

# B

BIOS 23, 57, 133 BladeCenter RAID Controller Module 1, 3 S SAS RAID 1 interfaces 3 BladeCenter management 4 BladeCenter S SAS RAID Controller Module interfaces 3

# С

Canada Class A electronic emission statement 174 change policy 80 China Class A electronic emission statement 176 Class A electronic emission notice 173 CLI 5,14 CLI interface 5 Command Line Interface 14 Concurrent controller maintenance procedure 47 configuration 10 blades 69, 72 boot disk 72 internal boot disk SAS expansion card 69

configuration (continued) SAS booting VMware 97 SAS HBA BIOS 147 Configuration SAS Booting AIX/VIOS 107 configuration, remote SAS booting 31 configure SDD PCM AIX/VIOS 107 configure, remote SAS booting 31 configuring driver 61 Host System Settings 26 SAS booting 64 SDD DSM 62 Configuring device mapper multipathing configuration File 28 configuring blades SAS Connectivity Card 75 configuring, driver 61 configuring, SAS driver 24 connect, host blade 15 considerations SAS connectivity card System X 18 Considerations SAS Expansion Card 17 considerations, Linux HA Clustering Environments 30 contamination, particulate and gaseous 172 creating a personalized support web page 167 custom support web page 167

# D

device mapper multipathing configuration File 28 disable IGMP telnet 78 IGMP snooping 78 web session 79 disable, IGMP 78 disable, IGMP snooping 78 Disk Drive type 9 Disk Drive Types Online SAS disk drives Nearline SAS Disk drives 9 documentation format 173 using 166 DSA, sending data to IBM 166 DSM 62

## Ε

electrical equipment, servicing xvi electronic emission Class A notice 173 ESX 3.5 89, 93 ESX 4.x 89, 93 ESXi 4.x 89 ESXi 5.x 89 European Union EMC Directive conformance statement 174

# F

FCC Class A notice 173 firmware 26, 57, 138, 141, 142, 145 Firmware 6, 23 firmware version 142, 146

# G

gaseous contamination 172 Germany Class A statement 175 guidelines servicing electrical equipment xvi trained service technicians xv

# Η

hardware service and support telephone numbers 167 HBAs 20 help from the World Wide Web 166 from World Wide Web 166 sending diagnostic data to IBM 166 sources of 165 host attachment 19, 51 Host attachment path considerations 12 host blade 15 host blades queue depth settings 106 Host Mapping 14 host system settings 89, 106 HS12 161 HS21 161 HS21-XM, 161 HS22 161 HS22V 161 HX5 161

IBM Storage Configuration Manager 14 Web browser 4
IBM Systems Director operating systems 4
IBM Taiwan product service 167
IGMP 78, 79
important notices 171 information center 166 inspecting for unsafe conditions xv install 17 installation 131, 133 AIX 6.1 110 Multipath.conf 28 operating system 31, 64, 98 Windows 64 post operating system 32 pre-operating system 157 SAS Integrated Controller Firmware 138 VIOS 121 Installation VIOS 124 installation, operating system 31, 64 installation, VIOS 121 installation, Windows 64 instruction CLI 93 Storage Configuration Manager 93 instructions VMware ESX/ESXi 5.1 92 instructions, SLES 42 interfaces 3 Introduction BladeCenter S SAS RAID 1 host attachment 1 SAS RAID host system 2

# J

Japan Class A electronic emission statement 176 JS 133 JS host blade 18 JS12 142 JS22 142 JS23 138 JS43 138

# K

Korea Class A electronic emission statement 176

# L

Linux 11, 19, 20, 23, 24, 25, 28, 29, 30, 31, 42, 47, 100, 102 LS20 161 LUN configuration parameters VMware Windows 101

# Μ

maintenance procedure 47 Mixed Storage Pools Nearline SAS DDMs Online SAS DDMs 10 MPTSAS 161 multipath configuration settings 93 Multipath Configuration, setting 30 multipath verification 48, 49 RHEL 6.2 48 SLES 11 SP3 49 Multipath.conf installation 28

### Ν

Nearline SAS Disk Drive 10 New Zealand Class A statement 174 notes, important 171 notices 169 electronic emission 173 FCC, Class A 173

# 0

Online SAS Disk Drive 10 operating system 17, 25, 28, 51 Linux 19, 20, 23, 26 Windows 51 Operating System 11 operating system installation 31 operating system, RHEL 32 operating systems 4 operations 15 overview host attachment 1 RAID 0 8 RAID 1 7 RAID 0 9 RAID 5 7

# Ρ

particulate contamination 172 People's Republic of China Class A electronic emission statement 176 post operating system, installation 32 Power System management 4 Prerequisites 15 product service, IBM Taiwan 167 PS 133 PS host blade 18 PS/JS host blade 18 PS/JS host blade BIOS 133 PS700 138 PS701 138 PS702 138

# Q

queue depth setting 25 VMware 89 queue depth settings 25, 61, 106

# R

RAID 6 RAID 0 Uses 8 RAID 1 Uses 7 RAID 10 Uses 9 RAID 5 Uses 7 RAID implementation 6 remote volume 121 requirements 2 RHEL operating system 32 RHEL 6.2 48 Russia Class A electronic emission statement 176

# S

S SAS RAID Controller Module 12 safety xiii safety statements xiii, xvii SAS 12 SAS adapters 19, 51 SAS architecture 12 SAS attachment LUN considerations operating system 12 SAS boot 121 SAS Boot pre-operating system installation 157 SAS boot installation 121 SAS booting 64 SAS connectivity 2 SAS Connectivity Card 75 SAS Driver x86-64 24 SAS driver settings 89 SAS driver, setting 24 SAS expansion 2 SAS Expansion Card 17, 23, 72 SAS Expansion Card firmware 145 SAS HBA 51 SAS HBA BIOS 147 SAS integrated controller microcode firmware 142 SAS RAID 17, 19 SAS RAID Controller 6 SAS RAID Controller Command Line Firmware Update 6 SAS RAID Controller Module 10, 14, 15, 51, 80, 93 attaching a host 2 Command Line Interface 5 host attachments 1 Logical configuration 10 SAS RAID Module 2 SCSI 12 SDD 62 SDD PCM 107 sending diagnostic data to IBM 166 service and support before you call 165 hardware 167 software 167 servicing electrical equipment xvi setting LUN parameters VMware 100 settings Linux HA clustering environments, multipath configuration 30 queue depth 61

settings (continued) SAS HBA BIOS 68 SUSE 30 Windows clustering 67 drive performance 80 Settings Red Hat Enterprise Linux 29 settings, drive performance 80 Settings, Red Hat Enterprise Linux 29 Settings, SAS 68 settings, server 30 settings, SUSE 30 settings, SUSE, Linux, server 30 settings, Windows, clustering 67 setup private network 80 setup, private network 80 SLES 42 SLES 11 SP3 49 software service and support telephone numbers 167 Subsystem Device Driver operating systems 11 suggestions 12 support web page, custom 167 System hdisk Status 119 System P 17 system storage management 4 System volume Status 119 System X 17 system x management 4 system z management 4

# T

Taiwan Class A electronic emission statement 177 telecommunication regulatory statement 173 telephone numbers 167 trademarks 170 trained service technicians, guidelines xv troubleshooting 47, 102

# U

United States FCC Class A notice 173 unsafe conditions, inspecting for xv update driver SAS Expansion Card 106 SAS HBA 85 firmware BIOS 86 update, BIOS 86 update, firmware 86 update, host based settings 32 update, SAS device driver, multipath driver 32 updated firmware package 6 updating 23 driver 20, 51

updating (continued) Windows firmware, bios 57 updating, diver 85 updating, driver 20, 51 updating, firmware, BIOS 23 updating, firmware, Windows 57 upgrade 161 using, SAS connectivity card 18 using, SAS Expansion 17

# V

verify firmware version 142, 146 VIOS 105, 106, 124, 128, 131 VIOS 2.1.1 121 VIOS fix packs 128 VIOS i-fix 131 VMware 11, 85, 86, 89, 93, 102 SAS booting 97 VMWare 101 VMware ESX/ESXi 5.1 92 VMWare Guest Operating Systems 100

# W

web browser 4 Windows 11, 51, 57, 61, 62, 64, 101

# X

x86-64 20, 26, 147 x86-64 blade 19

# IBW ®

Part Number: 00AK732

Printed in USA

(1P) P/N: 00AK732

